

Church Latin for beginners; an elementary course of exercises in ecclesiastical Latin / by J. E. Lowe; with a note by Canon Barry; and a foreword by the Rev. R. A. Knox.

Lowe, J. E. (Joyce Egerton), 1892-

London : Burns Oates & Washbourne, 1923.

<https://hdl.handle.net/2027/njp.32101056309295>

HathiTrust



www.hathitrust.org

**Public Domain in the United States,
Google-digitized**

http://www.hathitrust.org/access_use#pd-us-google

We have determined this work to be in the public domain in the United States of America. It may not be in the public domain in other countries. Copies are provided as a preservation service. Particularly outside of the United States, persons receiving copies should make appropriate efforts to determine the copyright status of the work in their country and use the work accordingly. It is possible that current copyright holders, heirs or the estate of the authors of individual portions of the work, such as illustrations or photographs, assert copyrights over these portions. Depending on the nature of subsequent use that is made, additional rights may need to be obtained independently of anything we can address. The digital images and OCR of this work were produced by Google, Inc. (indicated by a watermark on each page in the PageTurner). Google requests that the images and OCR not be re-hosted, redistributed or used commercially. The images are provided for educational, scholarly, non-commercial purposes.

CHURCH LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

AN ELEMENTARY COURSE OF EXERCISES
IN ECCLESIASTICAL LATIN

BY Joyce E. Egerton LOWE, M.A.

With a Note by CANON BARRY, D.D., *and a*

Foreword by the Rev. R. A. KNOX, M.A.

L O N D O N

BURNS OATES & WASHBOURNE LTD.

28 ORCHARD STREET

8-10 PATERNOSTER ROW

W. 1

E.C. 4

AND . AT . MANCHESTER . BIRMINGHAM . AND . GLASGOW

1923

(RECAP)

2517
. 5965-

Made and Printed in Great Britain.

NOTE

By CANON WILLIAM BARRY

I WAS very glad to see in print this little volume, which deals with our Church Latin; and I hope that it will be widely read and studied. The want of such a help has long been evident. Classical or heathen Latin is a beautiful creation of genius; but as a language it is dead. The Latin of Catholic Christendom is a living literature; great portions of it are every day read and recited all over the world, by thousands on thousands of priests, seminarists, religious orders of men and women. But they have never been taught the grammar of it, seldom have learned by reflection how marvellous a transformation it is of a language singularly hard to refashion; yet the miracle stands perfect in their sight. Perfect I call it, and take my position close to such masters of style as Ruskin, Matthew Arnold, and J. A. Symonds, whose hearty recognition of what another has termed "baptized Latin" was enhanced by their Oxford training in the classics. Not a degenerate offspring of Roman speech in decay, but a most original and happy adaptation of the popular idiom to sacred uses, our literature of sanctuary, cloister, and the schools is a world in itself.

Consider all that lies implicit in the single name of St. Jerome's *Latin Vulgate*. Remember St. Augustine's *Confessions*, the supreme example still of religious autobiography. Call to mind the *Summa* written by St. Thomas Aquinas, with its spiritual crown, *The Imitation*. And then launch out into the Liturgies of the West, the Lives of the Saints, the Hymnologies, the inspired prayers which, with all our critical training, we cannot in any way equal. It is a world, I repeat, laying under tribute old Hebrew, Hellenistic Greek, preluding the rise of grand Western romance and poetry, covering the middle space of more than a thousand years between classical and modern times.

The Vulgate and the Liturgy are twin portals by which we enter upon our own domain, as Christians who have received from Papal Rome the inspired word of God in the language best adapted to blend human with divine, while men move on towards peace and unity.

Let us try to know it better, that God-given mother-tongue of ours. It is holy, sublime, and simple, rich in devout associations and full of grace.

LEAMINGTON,
May Day, 1923.

iii

524300

FOREWORD

BY THE REV. R. A. KNOX, M.A.

THERE is a story told in one of our Catholic Colleges (and probably in all of them) which throws, it is to be feared, a sinister light upon the easy familiarity with which altar-boys, choirs, and even congregations patter out their ecclesiastical Latin. A boy in Latin class was exhibiting a mulish ignorance as to the meaning of the word *tantus*, and the class master, with that fatal tendency we all have to adopt the method of cross-examination, was trying to get the right meaning out of him. At last in despair he suggested: "Well, you have met the words *Tantum ergo Sacramentum* before; at least you know what *that* means." At which a great light dawned upon the boy, and he said: "Oh, yes, sir, I know *that*: it means 'Down in adoration falling.'" Most Catholic schoolmasters have had similar, if not quite so poignant, experiences.

Well, we all know that it is perfectly possible to "join in" a service without understanding a word of what the priest is saying or what his assistants are answering, since devotion does not depend upon an intellectual formula. And in any case, you can get Latin-and-English-in-parallel-columns editions of all the more important services nowadays, to glut your curiosity as to the meaning of the service if you cannot restrain it. What need, then, for any but priests (in them we naturally expect a certain glibness) to go through all the old grind of terminations, concordances, and sequences? Why should we try to interpret as a language what we so willingly submit to as a hieratic rigmarole? Why labour painfully over moods and tenses in the hope that we may one day catch out the curate over a false quantity? Were it not better to stick to our old *mumpsimus*? Kennedy, surely, is a yoke neither we nor our fathers were able to bear.

God forbid that we should try to make devotion into a high-brow exercise. There lives more faith in an honest *mumpsimus* than in half the gender rhymes, and probably there was more to be said than appears at first sight for the old Protestant lady who

found such comfort in the blessed word Mesopotamia. But there is this much to be said against the mumpsimizers: Church Latin was not meant to mystify. It was meant to express, not to conceal, the emotions and aspirations of the universal Church. Quite true that expression is not absolutely necessary; that a man without Latin can worship at a low Mass, just as a man with no ear for music can worship at a high Mass. But we who have no ear for music (more numerous, perhaps, than the organists imagine us to be) lose something in the way of *rapport* with our fellow-worshippers for lack of do-re-mi-fa; and surely it is equally true that the non-Latinist is apt to feel "out of it" when he hears the whole of Tenebræ without distinguishing one Latin word except (he flatters himself) "Amen." Common worship does demand a common form of expression; and it must be admitted that the English prayers we Catholics hear in Church are—well, they are not so numerous as the Latin ones.

What, then, are we all to go back to *Via Latina*? To watch Balbus building walls, and Cæsar throwing his forces across a bridge, in the hope that we may one day be able to construe *Sursum corda*? That would be going too fast. The schoolboy studies Latin in order that he may be brought into touch, according to his measure, with the life of that old, pagan civilization from which Europe sprang. To him, Balbus and Cæsar must be early intimates. To him, it is vitally important that Balbus built a wall. In building a wall, Balbus was a true Roman; he showed that capacity for engineering, that insistence on military safeguards, that love of permanent structure, that genius for nice delimitation, which are characteristic of his race. It is good that the schoolboy should know these things. It is not of the slightest importance that the altar-boy should know them.

Church Latin is a language by itself. To understand it completely you must begin at the very foundations—the foundations of Balbus' wall. But to have a working knowledge of it, a very much simpler process suffices. The characteristic idiom, which chiefly makes classical Latin hard to us, does not count for much in that Church Latin which is the *lingua franca* of Western Christendom—there is too much translation from, and reminiscence of, Greek and Hebrew originals to leave much impress of Cicero in the build of its sentences. But it is a language. Call it dog-Latin if you will; there remains a proverb which tells us that a living dog is better than a dead lion, and the difference between the dog-Latin of St. Jerome and the lion-Latin of Cicero is the difference between a living and a dead language. (I once

A NOTE ON HOW TO USE THIS BOOK

THE differences between Latin and English, as outlined in the Introduction, should first be grasped intelligently, rather than memorised. Then the Exercises can be attacked immediately, and grammatical points should be mastered as they occur. If in subsequent Exercises it appears that some point has been forgotten, it can be revised with reference to the Summaries of Accidence and Syntax which follow the Exercises.

In short, the idea of this book is that the language will be learned through translating the Exercises; and the Summaries of Accidence and Syntax are for reference and revision. The teacher is recommended constantly to bear in mind the object of the course, which is not the attainment of an exact knowledge of Latin Grammar, but a real acquaintance with the language used in the Church's liturgy.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
NOTE BY CANON WILLIAM BARRY	iii
FOREWORD BY THE REV. R. A. KNOX, M.A.	iv
AUTHOR'S PREFACE	vii
A NOTE ON HOW TO USE THIS BOOK	viii
INTRODUCTION:	
THE LATIN LANGUAGE	1
THE DIFFERENCES BETWEEN LATIN AND ENGLISH	4
PRONUNCIATION	5
READING ALOUD	7
EXERCISES	
SUMMARY OF ACCIDENCE	88
PRINCIPAL PARTS OF IRREGULAR VERBS IN COMMON USE	106
SUMMARY OF SYNTAX	113
FAMILIAR LATIN PRAYERS AND HYMNS	123
THE MEANINGS AND DERIVATIONS OF FAMILIAR CATHOLIC TERMS	128
VOCABULARY	132
INDEX	146

CONTENTS OF EXERCISES

<i>Section.</i>	<i>Exercises.</i>	<i>Accidence.</i>	<i>Syntax.</i>	<i>Page.</i>
I.	1-2	1st Conjugation: Pres. Indic. Act. of amo		8
II.	3-6	1st Declension: Singular	Use of Genitive and Dative cases	9
III.	7-8	1st Declension: Plural	Use of Ablative case	11
IV.	9-10	2nd Conjugation: Pres. Indic. Act. of moneo	Use of Adjectives	12
V.	11	Esse : Pres. Indic.		13
VI.	12	Present Infinitive Active	Use of Prolate Infinitive	14
VII.	13	Possum : Pres. Indic.		14
VIII.	14	2nd Declension: Nouns in -us , Singular		15
IX.	15	2nd Declension: Nouns in -us , Plural		16
X.	16-17		Gender of Nouns	16
XI.	18-19	2nd Declension: Nouns in -er		18
XII.	20-21	2nd Declension: Nouns in -um		19
XIII.	22-25		Use of Preposi- tions	21
XIV.	26-28	3rd Conjugation: Pres. Indic. Act. of rego		23
XV.	29-30	4th Conjugation: Pres. Indic. Act. of audio		24
XVI.	31	Imperative Mood		26
XVII.	32-34	Future Tense of amo , moneo , rego , audio , and sum		26
XVIII.	35-36	Imperfect Tense of amo , moneo , rego , audio , and sum	Use of cum (enclitic)	28
XIX.	37-41	3rd Declension: Mascu- line and Feminine Nouns		30
XX.	42-44	3rd Declension: Neuter Nouns		33
XXI.	45-47	3rd Declension: Adjectives		35
XXII.	48	4th Declension		38

CONTENTS

xi

<i>Section.</i>	<i>Exercises.</i>	<i>Accidence.</i>	<i>Syntax.</i>	<i>Page.</i>
XXIII.	49-50	5th Declension		39
XXIV.	51-52	Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses Act. of amo , moneo , and esse		41
XXV.	53	Future-Perfect Act. of amo , moneo , and esse		42
XXVI.	54	Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Act. of rego		43
XXVII.	55	Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Act. of audio		44
XXVIII.	56-57	Verbs with Irregular Perfect stems		45
XXIX.	58	Present Passive of amo and moneo		46
XXX.	59	Present Passive of rego and audio		47
XXXI.	60	Imperfect Passive (all Conj.)		48
XXXII.	61	Future Passive (all Conj.)		49
XXXIII.	62-63	Comparison of Adjectives	Use of quam in comparison; Ablative of Comparison	50
XXXIV.	64	Past Participles and Perfect Pass. Tense of amo and moneo		52
XXXV.	65	Future-Perf. and Pluperf. Pass. of amo and moneo		53
XXXVI.	66	Past Participles of 3rd and 4th Conjugations, and Perf., Fut. - Perf., and Pluperf. Tenses		54
XXXVII.	67-68	Personal and Reflexive Pronouns: ego , tu , se , and is , ea , id	Use of Pronouns	55
XXXVIII.	69	Demonstrative Pronouns: hic	Use of hic	57
XXXIX.	70	Demonstrative Pronouns: ille	Use of ille	58
XL.	71	Present Participles	Use of Pres. Participles	59
XLI.	72	Future Participles	Use of Future Participles	59
XLII.	73	3rd Conjugation Verbs in -io		60
XLIII.	74		Prohibitions: noli with Infinitive	62

<i>Section.</i>	<i>Exercises.</i>	<i>Accidence.</i>	<i>Syntax.</i>	<i>Page.</i>
XLIV.	75	Deponent and Semi-Deponent verbs	Use of Deponent verbs	62
XLV.	76	Pres. Infinitive and Imperative Passive		64
XLVI.	77	Relative Pronoun: <i>qui</i>	Use of Relative	65
XLVII.	78	<i>Eo</i> , and compounds of <i>eo</i>		66
XLVIII.	79	Pres. Subjunctive, Act. and Pass. (all Conj.)	Use of Pres. Subj. in Jussive and Optative clauses	68
XLIX.	80	The Pronoun <i>ipse</i>	Use of <i>ipse</i>	69
L.	81-82	Imperfect Subjunctive, Act. and Pass. (all Conj.)		70
LI.	83-84		The Ablative Absolute	72
LII.	85-86	Pluperf. Subjunctive, Act. and Pass. (all Conj.)	Use of <i>cum</i> , <i>when</i> , with Subj. Unfulfilled Conditions	73
LIII.	87-88	Perf. Subjunctive	Indirect Questions, Prohibitions, <i>ne</i> with Perf. Subj.	75
LIV.	89-90	Pres. Perf. and Fut. Infinitives, Act. and Pass.	Indirect Statement: Acc. and Infinitive Construction	77
LV.	91-92		Questions: <i>nonne</i> , <i>num</i>	79
LVI.	93		Time	80
LVII.	94		Use of Gerund	81
LVIII.	95		Use of Gerundive	82
LIX.	96		Use of Gerund and Gerundive with <i>esse</i>	83
LX.	97-100		Use of Supine	84

CHURCH LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

INTRODUCTION

THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

1. **THERE** was once a language called **Indo-European**.^{*} It is now lost; but we know more or less what it was like from a comparison of the daughter languages of which Indo-European was the mother. Two of these languages were **Greek** and **Latin**, which exhibit as many curious similarities and differences as we should expect to find between two sisters.[†]

2. **Latin** was the language spoken by the **Latins**, who were the inhabitants of **Latium**, a province of Italy of which **Rome** was the capital. In very early days Italy was made up of several different states, which were always at war with one another; each state spoke its own dialect or *patois*. Gradually the Romans gained the upper hand in Italy, and imposed the Roman or Latin dialect upon the tribes they conquered. Thus Latin became the language of all Italy, and finally of the Roman provinces, such as Gaul, Spain, Africa, and Asia Minor.

3. In its early stages the Latin language was heavy, clumsy, and uncouth. There are some curious examples of this old Latin (it is called **prisca latinitas**) still to be seen on ancient statues, tombstones, etc. Greece was far ahead of Italy in learning and culture.

4. About the middle of the third century B.C., a Greek named **Livius Andronicus** was taken prisoner in war, and brought to Rome to act as tutor to the children of some of the leading men there. This Livius Andronicus, although he was a Greek, was the first to attempt any serious composition in Latin. He trans-

^{*} Also known as Indo-Germanic and Aryan.

[†] For example, where Latin has an initial **s**, Greek has an aspirated vowel—e.g., the Latin for *six* is **sex**, the Greek, **ἕξ** (*hex*); cf. English *sextant* and *hexagon*. Again, where Latin has the voiced labial (**b**), Greek has the unvoiced (**p**): thus, Latin *sub* (*under*) = Greek *ὑπό* (*hupo*); Latin *expello* (*expel*) = Greek *ἐκβάλλω* (*ekballo*), etc.

lated several plays from the Greek, as well as the Homeric poem, the *Odyssey*.

5. Under the influence of Andronicus, a literary circle was formed at Rome, and gradually plays, poems, and prose works were produced in Latin, but always modelled on Greek originals.* In the hands of this literary circle the Latin language soon became less clumsy and uncouth, as each new writer aimed at greater refinement and polish. But the mass of the Roman people cared more about fighting and farming than about literature, and continued to speak the old rough Latin.

6. Thus it came about that from the time of Livius Andronicus, two kinds of Latin existed side by side: the Latin of the literary and cultured classes, called **sermo urbánus**, or the language of the town, and the Latin of the ordinary people, called **sermo vulgáris**.

7. The first century B.C. is known as the **Golden Age of Latin Literature**. In this period **Cicero**, orator, statesman and philosopher, brought literary Latin to its zenith, and developed a prose style which became at once the envy and despair of all subsequent Latin authors. No writing, either before or since, has had such a powerful and lasting influence upon the prose style of the literature of Western Europe. The greatest poet of the Golden Age was **Vergil**, author of the *Aeneid*, an epic poem which became the Bible, as it were, of the pagan Romans. To this age belong, also, the poets **Horace**, **Propertius**, and **Ovid**, the historian **Livy**, and the famous general **Julius Caesar**, who has left us Commentaries on his two great wars.

8. The Golden Age, which ended, roughly, with the death of the Emperor Augustus in A.D. 14, gave place to what is known as the **Silver Age**. In this period the literature lacked both deep feeling and spontaneity; style developed at the expense of matter, and a brilliant artificiality replaced the purity of the Golden Age.

9. By the second century a new influence had crept in: it had become fashionable to talk Greek. Even the children of the upper classes learnt to chatter it with their Greek nurses. Thus literary Latin began to die out, though the mass of the people still continued to use the **sermo vulgáris**.

10. It is this **sermo vulgáris** which finally developed into the different European dialects which we now call Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Roumanian, and so on. For example, the literary Latin word for a horse is **equus**; but the common word was

* * * Satire was the only kind of writing which was essentially a Roman production.

cabállus, from which we get *caballo* in Spanish, *cavallo* in Italian and Portuguese, *cheval* in French, *cal* in Roumanian, and such derivatives as *cavalry*, *cavalier*, *cavalcade*, etc., in English. These different dialects were known as the Romance (or Roman) languages, and a romance was originally merely a story written in one of these dialects.

11. The language of the early Church was Greek; thus we find that the New Testament and the writings of the Apostolic Fathers were all in Greek and not Latin. It is in Africa that **Ecclesiastical or Church Latin** first developed. The inhabitants of that country had learnt to speak the **sermo vulgáris**, or common Latin; they did not understand Greek. About A.D. 160 **Tertullian** was born at Carthage, and was converted to Christianity about the year 197. He first wrote in Greek, but soon abandoned it in favour of Latin, in order that he might be understood by the common people. His Latin is a mixture of the literary Latin, which was taught in the schools, and the **sermo vulgáris**. He coined a great many new words.

12. By the third century a **Latin translation of the Bible** was in circulation, and St. Augustine tells us that everybody who possessed a Greek manuscript tried his hand at turning it into Latin. Thus the need for one authoritative Latin version became imperative.

13. Towards the end of the fourth century Pope Damasus commissioned **St. Jerome**, the leading scholar of the day, to bring out a new Latin edition of the Bible. This was the famous **Vulgate**, which was finished in the year 405. It marked the end of ancient Latin, and the complete establishment of mediæval Latin. From this time onward Latin became the universal language not only of the Church, but also of the State. Scholars of all nationalities could meet and converse without difficulty, since in Latin they had a common language. Thus we find, for example, Erasmus coming to England at the beginning of the sixteenth century, and finding a place at once in the friendship of such men as More, Colet, Grocin, and Charnock, though he knew no word of English.*

14. The Latin which is taught in schools to-day is the literary Latin of the Golden Age: we call it **Classical Latin**. Ecclesiastical Latin differs from it chiefly in being much nearer to the **sermo vulgáris**, and is, therefore, not so artificially refined and polished

* Erasmus held the living of Aldington in Kent, but resigned it in 1512 because he could not discharge the duties of a parish priest, owing to his inability to speak the language.

as the **sermo urbānus**. But by the end of the fifth century "the Latin speech that was rhetorical, unsympathetic, and hard, had been softened by emotion, lifted on the wings of prophecy, made something with a soul in it, and a sacred tongue."*

15. The chief writers of Ecclesiastical Latin are **Tertullian** (second century), **St. Cyprian** (third century), **Lactantius** and **St. Ambrose** (fourth century), **St. Jerome**, **St. Augustine**, and **St. Leo the Great** (fifth century), the **Venerable Bede** (eighth century), **St. Bernard** (twelfth century), **St. Thomas Aquinas** (thirteenth century), and **Thomas à Kempis** (fifteenth century).

THE DIFFERENCES BETWEEN LATIN AND ENGLISH.

1. Latin is an **inflected language**. **Inflection** means bending, and most Latin words bend about at the end, and change. This alteration in the ending of a word shows us, for example, the "**case**" of a noun, pronoun, or adjective, and the voice, mood, tense, number, and person of a verb.

2. There are six cases in Latin: the **Nominative**, or subject case; the **Vocative**, or case of a person addressed; the **Accusative**, or Objective case; the **Genitive**, or Possessive case; the **Dative**, or case of the indirect object; and the **Ablative** case, which answers the questions *where?* *whence?* and *wherewith?*

3. A Latin noun, then, has different endings to show its cases. Thus **terra** is Nominative, **terram** Accusative, **terrae** Genitive, and so on. The six inflections of a noun are called the **Declension** of the noun. There are five Declensions in Latin—that is, five sorts of nouns; every noun must have one of five different sets of endings.

4. In English we show the case of a noun by its position in the sentence. Thus we know whether the dog bit the cat, or the cat bit the dog, by the position of the words "dog" and "cat" in relation to the verb. In Latin the order does not affect the case, which is merely shown by the ending. Thus in **terram regit rex**, *the king rules the land*, **terram** is the object, although it stands at the beginning of the sentence. (The verb usually comes at the end of a clause in Latin.)

5. Verbs also are inflected, and there are four **Conjugations**, or ways of inflecting verbs, just as there are in French. In conjugating a verb the personal pronouns "I," "thou," "he," etc.,

* Canon Barry, "The Holy Latin Tongue," *The Dublin Review*, April, 1906.

are omitted, the ending of the verb being a sufficient indication of the person and number.

6. Latin is a **very brief and concise language**, and never makes use of unnecessary words. There is no word at all for "the" or "a," and the possessive adjectives "his," "her," "its," and "their" are very often omitted, as well as the nominative personal pronoun with the verb. In translating Latin into English it is generally necessary to use more words than there are in the original in order to bring out the full meaning. Latin has a very small vocabulary, and often one Latin word may be rendered by a number of English ones which differ very slightly in their shades of meaning. Again, in Latin there is often only one way of saying something, while in English there are several. Thus, we can say "I love," "I am loving," or "I do love," in our present tense: Latin can only say **amo**.

7. In English, if we want to emphasize any word, we usually have to underline it or print it in italics; in Latin **the emphatic word** is often placed at the beginning or end of the sentence, or next to some contrasting word. Thus, where St. Peter says to Our Lord, "Lord, dost Thou wash my feet?" to get the proper emphasis in English we have to stress "Thou" and "my." In Latin these two words are put first: "**Dómine, tu mihi lavas pedes?**"

8. The **Gender** of nouns in Latin is confusing at first, though the difficulty is more apparent when translating from English into Latin, which is beyond the scope of this book. In Latin all male people are masculine, and female feminine; but inanimate things may be masculine, feminine, or neuter. As a general rule, 1st and 5th Declension nouns are feminine, 2nd and 4th masculine, while those of the 3rd Declension vary in gender.

PRONUNCIATION.

In the following rules the Italian method of pronunciation is adopted.

VOWELS.

With the exception of the diphthongs, **ae**, **oe**, **au**, every vowel is pronounced; a terminal **e** is never mute, as in English, but forms a separate syllable. The vowels in Latin may be long or short; the actual sound is the same, but the short vowel is said more lightly.

a is pronounced as the English **a** in **ăhā**.

e is pronounced as the French **é**.

i is pronounced as in French (English **ee** when long ; **i**, as in *pit*, when short).

o is pronounced as in French, when long. The short **o** in Latin has more the sound of the English **o** in **not**.

u is pronounced as the English **u** in **pull**, when short. When long, it is like the French **ou** (English **oo**).

DIPHTHONGS.

ae and **oe** are both pronounced as the English **ay** in **may**.

au is pronounced as the English **ow** in **now**.

CONSONANTS.

Every consonant is sounded, as in English. The consonants **k** and **w** are not used in Latin.

c is pronounced as **k** before **a, o, u, au,** and **h**.

e.g., *carus, cor, cura, causa, charta*.

c is pronounced as **ch** in **cherry** before **e, i, ae,** and **oe**.

e.g., *cedo, circum, caecus, coelum*.

g is pronounced as **g** in **gate** before **a, o, u,** and **au**.

e.g., *gallus, gomphus, guttur, gaudeo*.

g is pronounced as **j** in **journey** before **e, i,** and **ae**.

e.g., *gens, gigno, gaesum*.

gn is pronounced as **ni** in **union**.

e.g., *magnus*.

j is pronounced as **y** in **youth**.*

e.g., *justus*.

sc is pronounced as **sc** in **scatter** before **a, o, u,** and **h**.

e.g., *scala, scōpulus, scutum, schola*.

sc is pronounced as **sh** in **show** before **e, i,** and **ae**.

e.g., *descēndo, scimus, scaena*.

ti is pronounced as **tsi** before **a** and **o**.

e.g., *gratia, laudatio*.

h is not sounded.

N.B.—An accent (´) is placed on all the Latin words of more than three syllables in this book, to show where to lay the stress of the voice. In the Vocabulary at the end the actual quantity

* Some editors of Latin texts prefer to eliminate the letter **j**, and to replace it by **i**. For the sake of clearness **j** is used throughout this book.

is marked when the vowel is long : *e.g.*, **Māter**. The Ablative case of the 1st Declension is distinguished from the Nominative by a circumflex accent: *e.g.*, **aquā̄**. The final **-e** of Adverbs, when long, is so marked: *e.g.*, **dignē̄**.

READING ALOUD.

It is an excellent practice, especially at the beginning of the course, frequently to read aloud passages of some length from the Missal, the Breviary, the "Imitation," or the New Testament. The meaning of the passages may not be understood; but reading aloud is the best way of familiarising pupils with the pronunciation and spelling of Latin; and, further, they gain from it an indefinable insight into the beauty, spirit, and construction of the language. Great care should be taken to ensure correct pronunciation, accent, and quantity.

SECTION I.

First Conjugation : **AMÁRE**, to love.

Present Tense.

amo	I love, <i>or</i> I am loving	non amo	I do not love
amas*	thou lovest, <i>or</i> thou art loving	non amas	thou dost not love
amat	he loves, <i>or</i> he is loving	non amat	he does not love
amámus	we love, <i>or</i> we are loving	non amámus	we do not love
amátis	you love, <i>or</i> you are loving	non amátis	you do not love
amant	they love, <i>or</i> they are loving	non amant	they do not love

EXERCISE I.

VOCABULARY.

laudáre , to praise.	liberáre , to deliver.
adoráre , to adore.	oráre , to pray.
culpáre , to blame.	vocáre , to call.
speráre , to hope.	regnáre , to reign.

1. Laudámus. 2. Vocátis. 3. Liberat. 4. Non culpat.
 5. Orámus. 6. Culpas. 7. Non laudo. 8. Sperátis. 9. Vo-
 cámus. 10. Regnat. 11. Orátis. 12. Adóras. 13. Liberátis.
 14. Non laudat. 15. Spero. 16. Regnant. 17. Non culpámus.
 18. Non orat. 19. Adórant. 20. Non sperant.

EXERCISE II.

VOCABULARY.

regína , a queen.	ancílla , a handmaid.
fémína , a woman.	puélla , a girl.

1. Regína laudat. 2. Ancílla adórat. 3. Puélla culpat. 4. Fé-
 mína sperat. 5. Regína non sperat. 6. Fémína non vocat.
 7. Regína regnat. 8. Fémína culpat. 9. Ancílla orat. 10. Regína
 liberat. 11. Regnámus. 12. Ancílla non laudat. 13. Liberámus.
 14. Culpant. 15. Puélla vocat. 16. Adórant. 17. Fémína non
 sperat. 18. Culpátis. 19. Non sperámus. 20. Puélla orat.

* The 2nd person singular is always used when addressing one person, no matter what his rank.

SECTION II.

First Declension : Singular.

ROSA, a rose.

Nominative case	rosa	a (<i>or the</i>) rose (<i>subject</i>)
Vocative case	rosa	O rose
Accusative case	rosam	a rose (<i>object</i>)
Genitive case	rosae	of a rose
Dative case	rosae	to <i>or for</i> a rose
Ablative case	rosâ	by, with, <i>or from</i> a rose

EXERCISE III.

VOCABULARY.

filia, a daughter.**Maria**, Mary.**patria**, native land.**et**, and.**vita**, life.**epistola**,* a letter.**saepe** (*adverb*), often.**semper** (*adverb*), always.

1. Regina laudat epistolam. 2. Regina non amat feminam.
 3. Ancilla amat puellam. 4. Regina liberat puellam. 5. Puella
 amat Mariam. 6. Semper amamus patriam. 7. Filia amat
 feminam. 8. Ancilla et puella laudant reginam. 9. Semper
 amamus vitam. 10. Regina saepe laudat ancillam. 11. Puella
 saepe orat. 12. Ancilla non laudat epistolam. 13. Femina
 semper laudat filiam. 14. Puella et femina amant rosam.
 15. Regina liberat puellam et ancillam. 16. Laudamus reginam.
 17. Regina saepe orat. 18. Adoramus. 19. Femina amat
 patriam. 20. Regina saepe laudat feminam et puellam.

EXERCISE IV.

VOCABULARY.

quis ? who ?**cur** ? why ?**quia**, because.**sed**, but.

1. Non amo reginam quia culpam puellam. 2. Quis amat
 vitam ? 3. Cur culpas ancillam ? 4. Laudo puellam quia amat
 patriam. 5. Amamus feminam et puellam. 6. Quis culpam
 ancillam ? 7. Regina culpam puellam. 8. Culpamus ancillam
 sed laudamus puellam. 9. Femina non amat reginam quia culpam
 filiam. 10. Cur non laudas epistolam ? 11. Laudamus puellam

* Sometimes, but not so correctly, written **epistula**.

et ancillam. 12. Fémīna et filia orant. 13. Semper laudamus Mariam. 14. Cur non laudas puellam? 15. Regina liberat puellam et ancillam. 16. Cur non sperant? 17. Semper adoramus. 18. Quis amat rosam? 19. Regina regnat. 20. Saepe laudamus ancillam.

EXERCISE V.

(Genitive Case.)

VOCABULARY.

terra , the earth, land.	hora , an hour.
cujus ? whose ?	stella , a star.
glória , glory.	coróna , a crown.

1. Hora vitae. 2. Filia reginae. 3. Glória Mariae. 4. Ancilla reginae. 5. Filia feminae amat ancillam reginae. 6. Cujus epistolam laudas? 7. Laudo epistolam puellae, sed culpo epistolam ancillae. 8. Laudamus glóriam stellae. 9. Quis non laudat vitam Mariae? 10. Filia reginae liberat feminam. 11. Non laudo filiam feminae. 12. Cur culpas ancillam reginae? 13. Quis vitam reginae laudat? 14. Puella laudat coronam reginae. 15. Non amamus feminam et ancillam. 16. Non saepe culpamus ancillam. 17. Quis culpat puellam? 18. Regina liberat filiam feminae. 19. Semper laudamus rosam. 20. Fémīna et puella sperant.

EXERCISE VI.

(Dative Case.)

VOCABULARY.

monstrare , to point out.	dare , to give.
narrare , to narrate, tell.	fábula , a story.

1. Fémīna narrat fabulam filiae. 2. Puella dat rosam reginae. 3. Ancilla monstrat stellam feminae. 4. Damus coronam reginae. 5. Regina dat epistolam puellae. 6. Filia reginae narrat fabulam puellae. 7. Regina dat epistolam feminae. 8. Cuius vitam laudas? Semper laudo vitam Mariae. 9. Fémīna monstrat stellam filiae reginae. 10. Regina semper laudat filiam feminae, sed saepe culpat ancillam. 11. Semper laudamus glóriam Mariae. 12. Amo reginam quia laudat filiam. 13. Cujus fabulam laudas? 14. Laudo fabulam feminae. 15. Quis monstrat stellam puellae? 16. Cujus epistolam das ancillae? 17. Cur non speras? 18. Damus coronam reginae. 19. Regina saepe orat. 20. Non culpo puellam.

SECTION III.

First Declension : Plural.

Nominative case	rosae	roses (<i>subject</i>)
Vocative case	rosae	O roses
Accusative case	rosas	roses (<i>object</i>)
Genitive case	rosarum	of roses
Dative case	rosis	to or for roses
Ablative case	rosis	by, with, or from roses

EXERCISE VII.

VOCABULARY.

ornāre, to adorn.
via, a way, road.

nuntiāre, to announce.
aqua, water.

N.B.—In Latin the verb is often placed at the end of a sentence.

1. Puellae reginam amant. 2. Ancillae stellas monstrant.
3. Puellae laudant filias reginae. 4. Quis monstrat stellas reginae?
5. Ornāmus filiam reginae. 6. Filiae reginae fabulas narrant.
7. Saepe laudāmus filias feminae. 8. Puellae vitam amant.
9. Puellae dant rosas feminis. 10. Ancillae nuntiant.
11. Ancillae reginarum stellas puellis monstrant. 12. Fabulas saepe narrāmus.
13. Regina rosas feminae dat. 14. Semper laudāmus glóriam Mariae.
15. Puellae monstrant aquam et terram filiae reginae. 16. Quis culpat epistolas puellarum?
17. Semper amāmus patriam. 18. Puella narrat fabulam feminis.
19. Regina laudat rosas puellarum. 20. Femina monstrat viam puellis.

EXERCISE VIII.

(Ablative Case.)

VOCABULARY.

adjuvāre, to help.

pecūnia, money.

1. Filiae ornant reginam rosis. 2. Femina adjuvat puellam pecuniā.
3. Femina pecuniam ancillae dat. 4. Puella monstrat viam feminae.
5. Ancillae ornant filias reginae coronā et rosis. 6. Femina monstrat aquam et terram puellis.
7. Regina dat pecuniam ancillis. 8. Femina puellam pecuniā saepe adjuvat.

9. Cujus rosas laudas ? 10. Quis áduvat puéllam ? 11. Ancíllae narrant fábulas puéllis. 12. Fíliæ regínae líberat ancíllam pecúniá. 13. Quis áduvat féminam ? 14. Quis monstrat viam féminis ? 15. Laudámus corónam stellárum. 16. Epístolam puéllae culpámus, sed fábulam ancíllae laudámus. 17. Puéllae monstrant stellas et aquas. 18. Laudámus horas vitæ. 19. Quis non laudat epístolas fíliárum regínae ? 20. Fíliæ féminæ saepe culpant epístolas fíliárum regínae.

SECTION IV.

Second Conjugation : MONĒRE, to advise, or warn.

Present Tense.

moneo	I advise (<i>or am advising</i>)
mones	thou advisest
monet	he advises
monémus	we advise
monétis	you advise
monent	they advise

EXERCISE IX.

VOCABULARY.

tenére , to hold.	docére , to teach.
habére , to have.	vidére , to see.
timére , to fear.	terrére , to terrify.

1. Puélla tenet epístolam. 2. Fíliæ regínae docent ancíllas. 3. Non vídeo terram, sed vídeo aquam et stellas. 4. Ancíllae regínam timent. 5. Habémus rosas et corónas. 6. María habet corónam stellárum. 7. Quis videt viam ? 8. Regína terret ancíllas et puéllas. 9. Tenémus epístolam regínae. 10. Quis habet corónam ? 11. Féminæ terrent puéllas. 12. Regínam saepe tímémus. 13. Ancílla monstrat viam regínae. 14. Regína monet féminam. 15. Quis docet puéllam ? 16. Fíliæ regínae docet puéllam. 17. Regínam et fíliam saepe vídémus. 18. Regína habet corónam rosárum. 19. Fíliæ regínae terrent puéllas et ancíllas. 20. Quis videt regínam ?

EXERCISE X.

VOCABULARY.

magna , great.	longa , long.
bona , good.	parva , small.
mala , bad.	laeta , joyful, glad.

N.B.—In Latin the Adjective is usually placed after the noun, and it must agree with it in number, gender, and case.

1. *Regína magna puéllas bonas laudat.* 2. *Puéllae parvae timent regínam magnam.* 3. *Fémina bona docet ancíllam parvam.* 4. *Non habémus vitam longam.* 5. *Fémina mala terret puéllas parvas.* 6. *Regína magna laudat puéllas laetas.* 7. *Quis laudat puéllas malas?* 8. *Fémina monstrat viam longam.* 9. *Non tíneo regínam magnam.* 10. *Fémina bona docet filias parvas reginae magnae.* 11. *Ancíllae laetae pátriam vident.* 12. *Fémina narrat fábulam longam.* 13. *Puélla parva stellas monstrat.* 14. *Ancíllae bonae orant et sperant.* 15. *Regína bona puéllas parvas pecúniâ áduvat.* 16. *Puéllae parvae ornant regínam magnam rosis.* 17. *Quis liberat ancíllam bonam?* 18. *Quis non laudat puéllas bonas?* 19. *Docémus filias parvas reginae magnae.* 20. *Puéllae laetae regínam magnam vident.*

SECTION V.

The Verb **ESSE**, to be.

Present Tense.

sum	I am	sumus	we are
es	thou art	estis	you are
est	he is	sunt	they are

N.B.—The verb *to be* is followed by the Nominative Case in Latin, as in English.

EXERCISE XI.

1. *Regína est bona.* 2. *Reginae sunt magnae.* 3. *Puéllae sunt parvae.* 4. *Féminae sunt bonae.* 5. *Ancílla est laeta.* 6. *Sumus ancíllae reginae.* 7. *Quis dat rosam reginae?* 8. *Puéllae sunt ancíllae Mariae.* 9. *Bona et laeta es.* 10. *Vita non est longa.* 11. *Pátria est magna.* 12. *Glória Mariae est magna.* 13. *Horae vitae non sunt longae.* 14. *Fémina bona stellas puéllis parvis monstrat.* 15. *Via est longa et aquae sunt magnae.*

16. Fíliae regínae sunt ancíllae Maríae. 17. Estis bonae et laetae. 18. Non timémus regínam magnam. 19. Puélla est bona sed parva. 20. Quis docet filiam regínae ?

SECTION VI.

The Use of the Present Infinitive.

The Present Infinitive is used in Latin, as in English, to complete the sense of a verb: *e.g.*, **debémus oráre**, *we ought to pray*.

EXERCISE XII.

VOCABULARY.

audére, to dare.

debére, ought.

jubére, to order.

vult, he (*or she*) wishes.

1. Debémus speráre. 2. Regína jubet ancíllas oráre. 3. Quis non audet speráre ? 4. Regína vult vidére ancíllas. 5. Puéllae non audent docére filias regínae. 6. Cur times vidére regínam ? 7. Debémus amáre regínam. 8. Regína debet monére féminam. 9. Fémina bona non audet culpáre regínam magnam. 10. Puélla vult stellas vidére. 11. Fémina jubet ancíllam narráre fábulam. 12. Fémina vult monstráre viam regínae. 13. Cur timétis adjuváre ancíllam ? 14. Puélla parva aquam timet. 15. Fémina mala terret filias regínae. 16. Fília regínae non audet liberáre ancíllas. 17. Ancíllae corónam regínae dant. 18. Regína jubet ancíllas puéllam adjuváre. 19. Puéllae malae audent culpáre filiam féminae. 20. Puélla vult adjuváre féminam.

SECTION VII.

The Verb POSSE, to be able.

Posse is a compound of **esse**, *to be*, and was originally written **potesse**, being made up of the adjective **potis**, *able*, and **esse**, *to be*: hence *to be able*. Wherever the verb **esse** begins with an **s**, as in **sum**, **pos-** is written instead of **pot-**: *e.g.*, **possum**, not **potsum**. **Posse** is followed by the Infinitive.

Present Tense.

possum	póssumus
potes	potéstis
potest	possunt

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Non possum vidére. 2. Potes oráre. 3. Quis potest monére fémīnam? 4. Non possum fábulas narráre. 5. Quis potest vidére terram? 6. Regína magna ancíllas liberáre potest. 7. Fémīna non potest vocáre puéllas. 8. Cur culpas puéllas? 9. Culpo puéllas quia non possunt monstráre viam regínae. 10. Quis potest ancíllam liberáre? 11. Stellas vidére póssumus. 12. Quis non potest speráre? 13. Fília fémīnae non potest narráre fábulas longas. 14. Fémīna non potest monére puéllas. 15. Puéllae malae audent culpáre regínam. 16. Quis vocat fílias regínae? 17. Regína jubet fílias fémīnae viam monstráre. 18. Puéllae parvae non possunt adjuváre fémīnam. 19. Quis aquam timet? 20. Cur non potes monére fémīnam?

SECTION VIII.

Second Declension: Singular.

ÓCULUS, an eye.

Nominative case	..	..	óculus	an eye (<i>subject</i>)
Vocative case	..	..	óculē	O eye
Accusative case	..	..	óculum	an eye (<i>object</i>)
Genitive case	..	..	óculi	of an eye
Dative case	..	..	óculo	to or for an eye
Ablative case	..	..	óculo	by, with, or from an eye

EXERCISE XIV.

VOCABULARY.

Dóminus , the Lord.	ángelus , an angel.
Deus , God (<i>Vocative</i> , Deus).	fílius , a son (<i>Vocative</i> , fíli).
Christus , Christ.	mundus , the world.
Agnus , Lamb.	servus , a servant, slave.

1. Christum adorámus. 2. Ángelus adórat Agnum Dei. 3. Deus amat mundum. 4. Ángelus Dei núntiat Mariæ. 5. Servus et ancílla Dóminum amant. 6. Fíliæ regínae, ancíllae Mariæ, Deum adorant. 7. Fílius regínae Dóminum timet. 8. Mariæ est ancílla Dómini. 9. Deus liberat mundum. 10. Quis Deum non amat? 11. Adorámus Christum, Fílium Dei. 12. Glória Dei est magna. 13. Angelus Deum potest vidére. 14. Deum timére debémus. 15. Fílius regínae servum terret.

16. Dóminus jubet ángelum nuntiáre Mariæ. 17. Debémus amáre pátriam. 18. Christus mundum liberáre potest. 19. Christus est Fílius Dei. 20. Adorámus Agnum Dei.

SECTION IX.

Second Declension : Plural.

Nominative case	óculi	eyes (subject)
Vocative case	óculi	O eyes
Accusative case	óculos	eyes (<i>object</i>)
Genitive case	oculórum	of eyes
Dative case	óculis	to or for eyes
Ablative case	óculis	by, with, or from eyes

EXERCISE XV.

VOCABULARY.

pópulus, people.

amicus, a friend.

Paulus, Paul.

Apóstolus, an Apostle.

Sanctus, a saint.

Petrus, Peter.

1. Petrus et Paulus sunt Sancti. 2. Pópulus Deum adórat. 3. Ángeli Deum possunt vidére. 4. Servus regínæ est amicus Petri. 5. Paulus Christum adórat. 6. Petrus est Apóstolus Dómini. 7. Deus liberat pópulum. 8. Servus habet rosas et corónas. 9. Ancillæ fílias regínæ rosis ornant. 10. Amámus Sanctos Dei. 11. Ángeli adórant Agnum Dei. 12. Fílium regínæ vidére póssumus. 13. Ángelus Dei núntiat Petro. 14. Quis est amicus servi? 15. Cur non audes fábulam narráre filio regínæ? 16. Fílias parvas regínæ magnæ sæpe vidére póssumus. 17. Deum semper amáre debémus. 18. Deus jubet pópulum oráre. 19. Ancillæ reginam vidére non possunt. 20. Terra laudat et adórat Deum.

SECTION X.

Gender of Nouns.

Most nouns of the 1st Declension are **Feminine** in gender, whereas those of the 2nd Declension (ending in **-us**) are **Masculine**. An Adjective qualifying a masculine noun is therefore declined like **óculus**: *e.g., magnus óculus, a great eye; magni óculi, great eyes.*

EXERCISE XVI.

VOCABULARY.

sanctus , holy.	illumináre , to enlighten.
meus , my.	multus , much (<i>plural</i> , many).
tuus , thy.	cantáre , to sing.
quem ? whom ?	latus , broad.

1. Deus illúminat óculos meos. 2. Cur filias tuas culpas, O fémina ? 3. Non possum vidére terram óculis meis. 4. Fíliá mea est ancílla Mariæ. 5. Fílius meus est servus regínae. 6. Ángeli Dei sunt sancti. 7. Sancti Dei sunt laeti. 8. Ancíllae Mariæ sunt laetae. 9. Ancíllas parvas óculis tuis terrére potes. 10. Quem vidétis ? Vidémus fílium regínae. 11. Deus liberat mundum et pópulum. 12. Aqua est lata et terra est magna. 13. Cur das rosas ancíllis tuis ? 14. Christus est Fílius Dei. 15. Regínám non amámus quia non est bona. 16. Fémina epístolam meam non laudat. 17. Habémus multos servos et multas ancíllas. 18. Puéllae dant multas rosas regínae magnae. 19. Saepe vidémus fílium parvum regínae magnae. 20. Vidémus aquas latas et stellas multas. 21. Quis potest cantáre ? Puella potest cantáre. 22. Servus tenet multas epístolas. 23. Quis timet aquam ? 24. Puélla parva timet aquam latam. 25. Ancíllae cantant et orant.

EXERCISE XVII.

VOCABULARY.

albus , white.	serváre , to keep, save, preserve.
lúcidus , bright, clear.	pulsáre , to knock, knock at.
quot ? how many ?	atque , and, moreover.
fámulus , a servant.	diléctus , beloved.

1. Deus servat pópulum. 2. Aqua est lúcida. 3. Rosa est alba. 4. Via est lata et longa. 5. Agnus est albus. 6. Fámulus est diléctus. 7. Stellae sunt lúcidae. 8. Quis est fámulus regínae ? 9. Quot rosas habes ? 10. Quis pulsat portam meam ? 11. Fámulus regínae pulsat portam tuam. 12. Quot fámulos habes ? 13. Habeo multos fámulos. 14. Fíliá mea habet agnum album. 15. Deus servat atque illúminat mundum. 16. Regína habet corónam rosárum albárum. 17. María habet corónam stellárum lucidárum. 18. Quot stellas vidére potéstis ? 19. Non possumus vidére multas stellas. 20. Cur regínám times ? 21. Timeo regínám quia saepe culpat ancíllas. 22. Petrus est amícus diléctus pópuli. 23. Quot rosas in viis vidére potes ? 24. Non debémus pulsáre portam regínae. 25. Fámulus regínae cantáre potest. 26. Cur pulsas portam meam ? 27. Fámulus

meus servat agnos meos. 28. Aquam lúcidam videre pòssumus.
29. Non debes terrere agnos parvos. 30. Fámuli atque ancíllae
portam pulsant.

SECTION XI.

Second Declension (*Continued*).

N.B.—A few nouns of the 2nd Declension end in **-er** instead of in **-us**. Most of them drop the “e” after the Vocative singular, and from the Accusative case onwards are declined like **óculus**. They are all Masculine in gender.

AGER, a field.

				<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nominative	..	..	..	ager	agri
Vocative	..	..	..	ager	agri
Accusative	..	..	..	agrum	agros
Genitive	..	..	..	agri	agrórum
Dative	..	..	..	agro	agris
Ablative	..	..	..	agro	agris

N.B.—**Puer**, a boy, keeps the “e” throughout the declension—*e.g.*, Genitive, **pueri**, Dative, **puero**, etc.

EXERCISE XVIII.

VOCABULARY.

magister, a master.

liber, a book.

puer, a boy.

minister, a servant.

vir, a man (*Genitive, viri*).

arare, to plough.

1. Magístri púeros docent.
2. Mínistri libros regínae dant.
3. Púeri agros arant.
4. Magístrum semper laudámus.
5. Púeros et puéllas saepe culpámus.
6. Mínistri regínae agros latos arant.
7. Magíster librum púero dat.
8. Quis laudat librum magístri?
9. Vir fábulam longam púeris parvis saepe narrat.
10. Púeri cantant Dómino.
11. Regína habet agros latos.
12. Magíster malus púeros parvos terret.
13. Púeri tenent libros et epístolas.
14. Ángeli sunt mínistri Dei.
15. Viri et féminae Dóminum laudant.
16. Mínistri stellas pueris parvis monstrant.
17. Magístri vocant púeros malos.
18. Debémus arare agros regínae.
19. Púeri mali non audent culpáre magístrum.
20. Deus illúminat óculos ministrórum.

EXERCISE XIX.

(Adjectives in -er.)

VOCABULARY.

noster, our.**vester**, your.**pulcher**, beautiful, fair.**miser**, unhappy (*feminine, misera*).

1. *Régina est pulchra.* 2. *Viri sunt míseri.* 3. *Minístri nostri sunt laeti.* 4. *Púeri vestri sunt mali.* 5. *Pátia nostra est pulchra.* 6. *Amicus noster est filius magístri.* 7. *Agri nostri sunt lati et pulchri.* 8. *Servi vestri non possunt cantáre.* 9. *Óculi puéllae sunt magni et pulchri.* 10. *Cur miser es?* 11. *Miser sum quia magister non laudat epístolam meam.* 12. *Maria est pulchra.* 13. *Non debémus culpáre místros réginae.* 14. *Pátiam nostram semper amámus.* 15. *Fílius réginae non potest monére servum tuum.* 16. *Púeros parvos saepe terres.* 17. *Quis terram potest vidére?* 18. *Vidémus stellas et aquas latas.* 19. *Servi vestri sunt míseri, sed ancillae nostrae sunt laetae.* 20. *Régina pulchra terret servos míseros.* 21. *Cur fémina vocat puéllas?* 22. *Fémina vocat puéllas quia malae sunt.* 23. *Régina vult adjuváre púeros et puéllas.* 24. *Magíster noster docet fílios réginae.* 25. *Servi debent aráre agros.* 26. *Non possum cantáre.* 27. *Quis dat pecúniám parvis púeris?* 28. *Ángeli Dei sunt boni et pulchri.* 29. *Servi nostri sunt amíci ancillae.* 30. *Minístri adórant Agnum Dei.*

SECTION XII.

Neuter Nouns of the 2nd Declension.

Neuter nouns of the 2nd Declension have the first three cases of the singular ending in **-um**, and the first three cases of the plural in **-a**, otherwise they are declined like *óculus*.

REGNUM, a kingdom.

		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nominative	regnum	regna	
Vocative	regnum	regna	
Accusative	regnum	regna	
Genitive	regni	regnórum	
Dative	regno	regnis	
Ablative	regno	regnis	

EXERCISE XX.

VOCABULARY.

auxilium, help.
peccátum, sin.
saeculum, age.
óstium, gate.

Christiánus, a Christian.
bellum, war.
verbum, a word.
coelum, heaven (*plur.* coeli, coelos, etc.).

1. Saecula saeculorum. 2. Verbum Dei. 3. Regnum coeli.
 4. Auxilium Christianorum. 5. Ostium coeli. 6. Bellum timemus.
 7. Quis laudat verba reginae? 8. Peccatum non debemus amare.
 9. Feminae bellum semper timent. 10. Amicus magistri non laudat verba puerorum. 11. Ancilla vult videre ostium coeli.
 12. Coelum est regnum Dei. 13. Adoramus Verbum Dei. 14. Pueros parvos verbis tuis saepe terres.
 15. Quis epistolam tuam audet culpae? 16. Ministri verba reginae magistro nuntiant.
 17. Bella magna terrent viros et feminas. 18. Maria est auxilium Christianorum.
 19. Maria Christianos semper adjuvat. 20. Ostium coeli non possumus videre. 21. Famuli ostium pulsan.
 22. Stellas lucidas possumus videre. 23. Christiani sunt famuli Dei. 24. Bellum terret feminas. 25. Verba tua non laudamus.

EXERCISE XXI.

VOCABULARY.

judicare, to judge.
me, me.
te, thee.

periculum, danger.
nos, we or us.
vos, you (*subject or object*).

N.B.—The Neuter form of the Adjective ends in **-um**, and declines like **regnum**.

1. Adoramus te, Domine. 2. Liberamus vos, O servi. 3. Periculum est magnum. 4. Maria est Regina Coeli. 5. Verba magistri sunt bona. 6. Maria est auxilium nostrum. 7. Deus iudicat peccata nostra. 8. Deus nos semper amat. 9. Laudamus vos, quia boni estis. 10. Puellae parvae periculum timent. 11. Pericula magna terrent pueros et viros. 12. Populum iudicare non debemus. 13. Servi nuntiant verba reginae magistro. 14. Habemus multos servos et ministros. 15. Sanctus es, Deus. 16. Ostium coeli est pulchrum. 17. Peccata sunt mala. 18. Servi sunt miseri quia periculum timent. 19. Quem times, O serve? 20. Petrum et Paulum, Sanctos Dei, semper laudamus.

SECTION XIII.

Prepositions.

Prepositions govern either the **Accusative** or **Ablative** case, or occasionally both these cases, in Latin.

EXERCISE XXII.

VOCABULARY.

ante , before (Acc.).	pro , for, on behalf of (Abl.).
post , after (Acc.).	cum , with (Abl.).
stare , to stand.	pugnâre , to fight.

1. *María orat pro mundo.* 2. *Ángeli stant ante óstium coeli.* 3. *Pugnâmus pro pátriâ.* 4. *Cur orátis pro filio regínae?* 5. *Orâmus pro filio regínae quia est miser.* 6. *Stamus cum amícis nostris.* 7. *Post multas horas perículi puéllae sunt laetae.* 8. *Dóminus líberat nos.* 9. *Sancti orant pro mundo.* 10. *Cur non audes pugnâre pro pátriâ tuâ?* 11. *Pugnâmus pro amícis nostris.* 12. *Regína vocat minístros et servos.* 13. *Ancíllae orant pro reginâ magnâ.* 14. *Quis non potest pugnâre pro pátriâ?* 15. *Servi stant ante óstia.* 16. *Post multa perícula pátriam nostram vidére póssumus.* 17. *Quis pugnât cum servis?* 18. *Debémus orâre pro ancíllis regínae, quia míserae sunt.* 19. *Regína jubet servos pugnâre pro pátriâ.* 20. *Puélla vult stare cum féminâ.*

EXERCISE XXIII.

VOCABULARY.

ad , to, at, towards (Acc.).	in , in, on (Abl.); into (Acc.).
trans , across (Acc.).	a (ab before a vowel), by, from (Abl.).
jánua , gate, door.	ambulâre , to walk.

1. *Deus est in coelo.* 2. *Orâmus ad Deum.* 3. *Servi sunt in agris.* 4. *Vídeo viros trans aquam.* 5. *In Deo debémus sperâre.* 6. *María orat ad Deum pro mundo.* 7. *Ambulâmus cum amícis nostris.* 8. *Stamus ante jánua.* 9. *Sancti ámbulant in viâ Dómini.* 10. *Deus líberat nos a perículo.* 11. *María est Jánua Coeli.** 12. *Quem vides trans aquam?* 13. *Cuius libros laudas?* 14. *Servi míseri stant in viis.* 15. *Minístri regínae agros latos arant.* 16. *Puéllae ámbulant in viis cum féminâ.* 17. *Quem vidétis in agris?* 18. *Vidémus filios regínae in agris.* 19. *Ambulâmus ad agros.* 20. *Ambulâmus ad jánua cum amícis nostris.*

* See page 129.

21. *Stellas lúcidas in coelis vidémus.* 22. *Quis jánuam pulsat?*
 23. *Fámuli servant óstium.* 24. *Quot agnos habétis in agris?*
 25. *Fámuli regínae agros arant.*

EXERCISE XXIV.

N.B.—Adjectives may be used without a noun in Latin: *e.g., boni, the good, or good people, mali, the wicked, etc.* So *malum* (neuter singular) means *evil* (literally, *a bad thing*).

VOCABULARY.

<i>inimícus</i> , an enemy.	<i>beátus</i> , blessed.
<i>justus</i> , just.	<i>ánima</i> , soul, life.
<i>ira</i> , anger.	<i>clamáre</i> , to cry.
<i>de</i> , from, concerning (Abl.).	<i>profúndum</i> , a depth.

1. *De profúndis clamámus ad te, Dómine.* 2. *Deus júdicat peccáta malórum.* 3. *Deus liberat nos a malo.* 4. *Vitae Sanctórum sunt beátae.* 5. *Ánimae justórum sunt in coelo.* 6. *Timémus iram Dei.* 7. *Inimíci nostri non laudant nos.* 8. *Ángeli Dei sunt beáti.* 9. *Justi ámbulant in viâ Dómini.* 10. *Deus illúminat óculos justórum.* 11. *Cur stas in viâ et oras?* 12. *Stellae sunt óculi coeli.* 13. *Deus est in coelis.* 14. *Béati vident óstia coelórum.* 15. *Deus est justus, et liberat nos a malo.* 16. *Ad te, Sancta María, clamámus.* 17. *Christiáni ámbulant in viis Dómini.* 18. *Stamus ante jánuam coeli et clamámus ad Dóminum.* 19. *Iram Dei semper timére debémus.* 20. *Deus regnat in coelis.*

EXERCISE XXV.

VOCABULARY.

<i>sedére</i> , to sit.	<i>exaltáre</i> , to exalt.
<i>quid?</i> what?	<i>déxtera</i> , right hand.*
<i>vivus</i> , living.	<i>misericórdia</i> , mercy.
<i>mórtuus</i> , dead.	<i>leváre</i> , to lift up.

1. *Deus júdicat vivos et mórtuos.* 2. *Christus sedet ad dexteram Dei.* 3. *Ad te, Dómine, óculos meos levo.* 4. *De profúndis óculos nostros ad Deum levámus.* 5. *Justi sperant in misericórdiâ tuâ, Dómine.* 6. *Fílii regínae ámbulant in viâ justórum.* 7. *Deus liberat nos ab inimícis nostris.* 8. *Sperámus in misericórdiâ Dei.* 9. *Quid times, O serve? Tímeo iram magístri.* 10. *Déxtera Dei me exaltáre potest.* 11. *Ad te, Dómine, levo ánimam meam.* 12. *Sancti sedent in coelo, et orant pro mundo.* 13. *Servus meus est mórtuus.* 14. *Deus júdicat vitas mortuórum.* 15. *Debémus amáre inimícos nostros.*

* *déxtera* is sometimes written *dextra*.

16. *Vivi sperant in misericordiâ Dómini.* 17. *Regína est mísera quia ancílla est mórtua.* 18. *Déxtera Dei exáltat justos.* 19. *Ira Dómini nos terret.* 20. *Cur non times verba Dómini ?*

SECTION XIV.

Third Conjugation : RÉGERE, to rule.

Present Tense.

rego	I rule (<i>or am ruling</i>)
regis	thou rulest
regit	he rules
régimus	we rule
régitis	you rule
regunt	they rule

EXERCISE XXVI.

VOCABULARY.

dúcere, to lead.

dicere, to say, tell.

lúdere, to play.

quo ? whither ?

benedícere, to bless.

mítttere, to send.

scribere, to write.

vádere, to go, walk.

1. *Quo vadis ?* 2. *Quem mittis ?* 3. *Quid dicis ?* 4. *Deus nos benedicit.* 5. *Quid scribitis ?* 6. *Quis epístolam mittit ?* 7. *Deus regit mundum.* 8. *Quid dicitis ?* 9. *Quem servus ducit ?* 10. *Púeri ludunt in agris.* 11. *Quo vadit servus ?* 12. *Servus vadit ad agros.* 13. *Quis potest scribere epístolam ?* 14. *Servus ducit puéllas et púeros.* 15. *Mitto servum meum ad reginam.* 16. *Quid scribis in epistolâ ?* 17. *Ancílla ducit parvam puéllam.* 18. *Deus justos benedícit.* 19. *Quem mittis ad reginam ?* 20. *Quo vadunt púeri ?*

EXERCISE XXVII.

VOCABULARY.

relínquere, to leave.

diligere, to love.

umbra, a shadow.

ala, a wing.

protégere, to protect.

cognóscere, to know.

deféndere, to defend.

sub, under (Abl.).

1. *Deus protégit me sub umbrâ alárum.* 2. *Deus nos diligit et nos Deum diligimus.* 3. *Nos cognóscimus Christum, et Christus cognóscit nos.* 4. *Quo vadit ancílla ?* *Ancílla vadit*

ad reginam. 5. Púeri stant in agris et sub umbrâ. 6. Alae angelorum sunt pulchrae. 7. Filius reginae librum magnum scribit. 8. Dóminus nos deféndit ab inimícis nostris. 9. Deus mittit ángelos ad terram. 10. Christus relínquit terram et vadit ad coelos. 11. Ángelos Dei diligimus. 12. Cur relínquis púeros in agris? 13. Ángeli nos protégere possunt sub umbrâ alárum. 14. Deus nos deféndit a perículo. 15. Debémus diligere inimícos nostros. 16. Quid dicis, O magíster? verba tua non laudo. 17. Puéllae parvae ludunt in agris sub umbrâ. 18. Regnum Dei est in coelo. 19. Quis servum ad reginam mittere potest? 20. Púeri non audent lúdere in viis, quia timent fílios magistri.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

VOCABULARY.

príncípium, a beginning.

tóllere, to take away.

dimíttre, to dismiss or forgive.

suus, his (or her, or their) own.

nunc (*adverb*), now.

1. In princípío, et nunc, et semper, et in saécula saeculorum. 2. Agnus Dei tollit peccáta mundi. 3. Deus dimíttit peccáta pópuli. 4. Quis audet nos culpáre? 5. Cur laudas púeros malos? 6. Ángeli Dei protégent nos a perículis. 7. Sancti Dei sunt in coelis. 8. Deus benedícit justos et bonos. 9. Christus nunc relínquit mundum. 10. Deus amat pópulum suum. 11. Quis audet mittere servum ad reginam magnam? 12. Regína laudat filios suos, sed culpát filias féminae. 13. Alas angelorum non vidére póssumus. 14. Mínistri reginae arant agros, sed púeri ludunt in umbrâ. 15. Deus illúminat óculos pópuli. 16. Déxtera Dei exáltat Sanctos suos. 17. Féminae sedent in agris. 18. Regína dimíttit peccáta ancillárum. 19. Fílius magistri docet púeros parvos. 20. Púeri et puéllae vadunt in agros.

SECTION XV.

Fourth Conjugation : AUDÍRE, to hear.

Present Tense.

audio	I hear (<i>or am hearing</i>)
audis	thou hearest
audit	he hears
audimus	we hear
auditis	you hear
audiunt	they hear

EXERCISE XXIX.

VOCABULARY.

impedire, to hinder.**sepelire**, to bury.**punire**, to punish.**exaudire**, to hear graciously.**venire**, to come.**advenire**, to come to, arrive at.

1. F  minae p  erum sep  liunt. 2. Pu  lla venit ad me. 3. Quis punit ancillam? 4. P  eri imp  diunt mag  strum. 5. Christus audit nos, Christus exaudit nos. 6. Aud  mus alas angel  rum. 7. Adv  nimus ad j  nuam. 8. Quid te impedit? 9. Cur punit p  eros parvos? 10. Cuius filium sepel  tis? 11. Mag  ster punit p  eros malos, sed laudat pu  llas bonas. 12. Quis audet nos punire? 13. Non debes impedire servos reginae. 14. Sanctus Petrus stat ad   stium coeli. 15. Quis potest audire alas angel  rum? 16. P  eri et pu  llae v  niunt in agros. 17. Cur punit servum bonum? 18. Regina magna jubet servos suos punire ancillam miseram. 19. Pu  lla parva vult l  dere in agris. 20. Deb  mus audire verba mag  str  rum nostr  rum.

EXERCISE XXX.

VOCABULARY.

plenus (*followed by Abl.*), full.**propter** (*Acc.*), on account of.**nobis**, *Dat. and Abl. of nos.***custodire**, to guard.**gr  tia**, grace.**  gere**, to do, act, drive.**gr  tias   gere**, to thank (*Dative of person*).**aperire**, to open.

1. Maria est plena gr  ti  . 2. Deo gr  tias   gimus. 3. Servus   perit j  nuas. 4.   ngeli Deo gr  tias agunt. 5. Servi et ministri cust  diunt reginam. 6. Sancti et Ap  stoli sunt pleni gr  ti  . 7. Gr  tias   gimus Deo propter magnam gl  riam. 8. Nunc dim  ttis servum tuum, D  mine. 9. Plena est terra gl  ri   tu  , D  mine. 10. Deo gr  tias   gere semper deb  mus. 11. Ministri reginae orant pro nobis. 12. Pleni sunt coeli et terra gl  ri   Dei. 13.   ncilla D  mino gr  tias agit. 14.   ngeli Dei nos cust  diunt sub umbr   alarum suarum. 15. Servi sunt miseri propter pecc  ta sua. 16. Regina jubet servos custodire j  nuas. 17. F  mina s  pelit filium m  rtuum. 18. Tim  mus reginam propter iram. 19. Te ador  mus et benedicimus, Deus. 20. Coelum est plenum gl  ri   Dei.

SECTION XVI.

The Imperative Mood.

The 2nd person singular of the Imperative Active of any verb is formed by removing the **-re** of the Infinitive: *e.g.*, **amâre**, to love, **ama**, love thou; **audire**, to hear, **audi**, hear thou.

The 2nd person plural of the Imperative Active is formed by adding **-te** to the 2nd person singular, except with 3rd Conjugation verbs, when the **-e** of the singular must first be changed to **i**: *e.g.*, **ama**, **amâte**; **mone**, **monête**; **audi**, **audite**; but **rege**, **régite**.

EXERCISE XXXI.

VOCABULARY.

convêrtère, to turn.
thronus, a throne.

ave (*Imperative*), hail!
intercédere, to intercede.

1. **Ângeli** stant ante thronum Dei. 2. Ora pro nobis, Sancta **María**. 3. Intercédite pro nobis, Sancti Petre et Paule. 4. **Ângeli** Dei, custodite nos. 5. Jube me venire ad te, **Dómine**. 6. Venite ad me. 7. Defende nos, **Dómine**. 8. Exaudi nos, **Christe**. 9. Leva oculos tuos et vide ángelos. 10. Prôtege nos, **Deus**, sub umbrâ alárum tuárum. 11. Libera nos, **Dómine**, a periculo et malo. 12. Ave **María**, grátia plena. 13. Protégite nos, Sancti Apóstoli. 14. Ádjuva nos, Sancta **María**. 15. Illúmina oculos meos, **Dómine**. 16. Custodite óstia, servi. 17. Venite in agros et lúdite, púeri. 18. Monête púeros, magístri. 19. Convêrte oculos tuos ad **Dóminum**. 20. **Ângeli** vident thronum Dei.

SECTION XVII.

Future of 1st and 2nd Conjugations.

amábo	I shall love	monébo	I shall advise
amábis	thou wilt love	monébis	thou wilt advise
amábit	he will love	monébit	he will advise
amábimus	we shall love	monébimus	we shall advise
amábitis	you will love	monébitis	you will advise
amábunt	they will love	monébunt	they will advise

EXERCISE XXXII.

1. Levábo oculos ad Dóminum. 2. Deus adjuvábít et liberábít nos. 3. Orábimus ad Dóminum Deum nostrum. 4. Laudábítis verba Dómini. 5. Vidébis ángeles Dei. 6. Timébimus te, Dómine. 7. Verba tua terrébunt púeros parvos. 8. Stábimus ante jánuas coeli. 9. Ángeli vidébunt glóriam Dei. 10. Dextera Dei exaltábít justos. 11. Dóminus illuminábít oculos meos. 12. Deus liberábít pópulum suum. 13. Stábimus ante thronum Dei. 14. Clamábimus ad Dóminum. 15. Dóminus judicábít nos. 16. Sancti habébunt glóriam in coelis. 17. Ambulábimus in viis Dómini. 18. Quis audébit mittere servum ad reginam? 19. Regina jubébit te scribere multas epístolas. 20. Fémina narrábít fábulas longas.

Future of ESSE.

ero	I shall be	érimus	we shall be
eris	thou wilt be	éritis	you will be
erit	he will be	erunt	they will be

EXERCISE XXXIII.

VOCABULARY.

íterum, again.
sicut, as.
ut, as, when.

pupílla, pupil (*of eye*), apple of eye.
pius, pious, gentle, loving.
solus, alone.

1. Érimus boni. 2. Púeri erunt mali. 3. Puélla erit pulchra. 4. Quis erit magister? 5. Laetus ero. 6. Pius eris. 7. Dóminus adjuvábít servos suos. 8. Deus solus est bonus. 9. Custódi me, Dómine, ut pupíllam óculi: sub umbrá alárum tuárum prótege me. 10. Íterum clamábo ad te, Dómine. 11. Sancti erunt in coelo. 12. Laudáte Deum, Apóstoli et Sancti. 13. De profúndis clamábo ad te, Dómine. 14. Veníte, filii, et audíte me. 15. Dextera Dei exaltábít me. 16. Lauda, ánima mea, Dóminum. 17. Amíci nostri sperant in Deo. 18. Ángeli stant ante thronum Dei. 19. Justi erunt beáti. 20. Íterum vénimus ad te, Dómine.

SECTION XVII (*Continued*).

Future of 3rd and 4th Conjugations.

N.B.—The Future of the 3rd and 4th Conjugations differs considerably from that of the 1st and 2nd, and care must be taken not to confuse the Future of the 3rd Conjugation with the Present of the 2nd.

regam	I shall rule	aúdiam	I shall hear
reges	thou wilt rule	aúdiēs	thou wilt hear
reget	he will rule	aúdiēt	he will hear
regémus	we shall rule	audiémus	we shall hear
regētis	you will rule	audiētis	you will hear
regent	they will rule	aúdiēt	they will hear

EXERCISE XXXIV.

VOCABULARY.

divínus, divine.

súrgere, to rise.

légere, to read.

osténdere, to show.

resúrgere, to rise again.

nunquam, never.

1. Deus osténdet nobis misericórdiam suam. 2. Legémus multos libros. 3. Quis póterit scribere epístolam? 4. Audiémus verba magistri. 5. Púeri ludent in agris. 6. Deus nos próteget sub umbrá alárum. 7. Ángeli nos custódient. 8. Deus nos deféndet. 9. Sanctus Petrus apériet óstium coeli. 10. Christus tollet peccáta mundi. 11. Véniam ad te, Dómine. 12. Adveniémus ad jánuam coeli. 13. Deus solus est divínus. 14. Délixtera Dei nos deféndet. 15. Quis póterit aperíre óstium coeli? 16. Quo convértam óculos meos? 17. Deus me custódiet ut pupíllam óculi sui. 18. Sanctus Paulus intercédet pro nobis. 19. Deus dimíttet peccáta nostra. 20. Deus solus est sanctus et pius et divínus.

SECTION XVIII.

Imperfect of all Conjugations.

amábam	monébam	regébam	audiébam	eram
amábas	monébas	regébas	audiébas	eras
amábat	monébat	regébat	audiébat	erat
amabámus	monebámus	regebámus	audiebámus	erámus
amabátis	monebátis	regebátis	audiebátis	erátis
amábant	monébant	regébant	audiébant	erant

N.B.—The Imperfect Tense is used to express continuous or habitual action in past time, and may be translated *I was loving*, or *I used to love*.

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Ancillae clamabant ad Deum. 2. Regina laudabat puellas. 3. Femina narrabat fabulam longam. 4. Audiebamus verba magistri. 5. Puella timebat reginam. 6. Regina erat bona et pulchra. 7. Pueri aperiabant januas. 8. Ministri docebant filios feminae. 9. Servus ducebat puellas parvas. 10. Femina monstrabat stellas filio reginae. 11. Magister pueros malos puniebat. 12. Sicut erat in principio, et nunc, et semper, et in saecula saeculorum. 13. Magister bonus moniebat pueros parvos. 14. Regina laudabat epistolas tuas. 15. Maria erat ancilla Domini. 16. Puella librum longum legebat. 17. Non poteramus venire ad januam. 18. Puer parvus scribebat epistolam longam. 19. Gloria sanctorum erat magna. 20. Timebamus verba feminae. 21. Puella fabulam longam nobis narrabat. 22. Angelus veniebat ad Mariam. 23. Quis poterat legere librum? 24. Cur ludabas in agris? 25. Magister nos semper terrebat. 26. Servi reginae januam custodiebant. 27. Ambulabamus in viis. 28. Magister erat pius. 29. Cur veniebas ad me? 30. Verba reginae terrebat puellam parvam.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

VOCABULARY.

totus, whole, all.
benedictus, blessed.
ascendere, to ascend.
fieri, to weep.

aeternus, eternal.
in aeternum, to eternity.
descendere, to descend.
ecce, behold.

N.B.—The preposition **cum**, *with*, is suffixed to the ablative case of the personal pronouns: *e.g.*, **mecum**, *with me*; **nobiscum**, *with us*; **vobiscum**, *with you*, etc.

The verb *to be* is often omitted in Latin, and must be supplied in the English: *e.g.*, **Dominus vobiscum**, *the Lord be with you*.

1. Tota pulchra es, Maria. 2. Ecce ancilla Domini. 3. Adoramus te in aeternum, Domine. 4. Feminae sedebant et flebant. 5. Nunquam videbo reginam. 6. Christus ascendit in coelum. 7. Christus descendit ad terram. 8. Ecce Agnus Dei. 9. Ave Maria, gratia plena, Dominus tecum. 10. Benedicta es, Maria. 11. Deus est aeternus. 12. Angeli descendunt de coelo. 13. Quis videbit gloriam Dei? 14. Nunquam iterum te videbo. 15. Quid dicis, O magister? 16. Cur laudabas pueros et culpabas puellas? 17. Pueri et puellae ludabant in agris cum ancilla reginae. 18. Veniam tecum ad reginam. 19. Angeli Dei custodient nos. 20. Quid times? Deus semper protegit populum suum. 21. Te laudabimus in aeternum, O Deus.

22. Grátias agémus Dómino. 23. Regína mittet multos servos ad féminam. 24. Sancti ascéndent ad coelos. 25. Ángelus Dei nuntiábat Maríae. 26. Vitam nostram Dómino damus. 27. Deus próteget et custódiét nos in perículo. 28. Rosas multas reginae magnae dábitus. 29. Deus nos jubébit veníre ad óstium coeli. 30. Christe, audi nos; Christe, exaúdi nos.

SECTION XIX.

Third Declension.

N.B.—The 3rd Declension is difficult because the Nominative Singular may terminate with almost any letter of the alphabet, and the stem of the noun may differ from the Nominative. It is therefore necessary to know the stem of a noun before it can be declined, and as the stem is found by removing the case-ending of the Genitive Singular, in the subsequent vocabularies the Genitive case is given after all nouns. As the Gender of the 3rd Declension varies, the gender of these nouns will be given.

CLAMOR, a cry (*m.*).

		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nominative		clamor	clamóres
Vocative		clamor	clamóres
Accusative		clamórem	clamóres
Genitive		clamóris	clamórum
Dative		clamóri	clamóribus
Ablative		clamóre	clamóribus

EXERCISE XXXVII.

VOCABULARY.

múlier, mulieris (*f.*), a woman.

labor, labóris (*m.*), work.

amor, amóris (*m.*), love.

pastor, pastóris (*m.*), a shepherd.

martyr, mártýris (*m. or f.*), a martyr.

redemptor, redemptóris (*m.*), a redeemer.

1. Clamóres nostri véniunt ad te, Dómine. 2. Mártýres vitam suam Dómino dant. 3. María est Regína Mártýrum. 4. Mulieres véniunt ad Christum. 5. Amor Dei est magnus. 6. Deus benedícet labórem nostrum. 7. Audímus clamóres puerórum. 8. Vidémus pastórem in agris. 9. Christus est Redemptor mundi. 10. Ora pro nobis, Regína Mártýrum. 11. Regína laudat labórem ministrórum. 12. Mulieres non saepe audent pugnare in bello. 13. María est auxilium nostrum in labóre. 14. Mulieres

flebant ante thronum reginae. 15. Videbamus multos pastores in agris. 16. Amor reginae est magnus. 17. Damus multas rosas mulieribus. 18. Audiebamus clamores mulierum. 19. Jesus est pastor bonus. 20. Labor pastorum est magnus.

Third Declension (*Continued*).

N.B.—The following declensions show some common types of 3rd Declension nouns. The singular only is given, as the plural in each case is quite regular.*

	PAX (<i>f.</i>), peace.	VIRGO (<i>f.</i>), Virgin.	MILES (<i>m.</i>), soldier.
Nominative ..	pax	Virgo	miles
Vocative ..	pax	Virgo	miles
Accusative ..	pacem	Virginem	militem
Genitive ..	pacis	Virginis	militis
Dative ..	paci	Virgini	militi
Ablative ..	pace	Virgine	militē

	VIRTUS (<i>f.</i>), virtue.	LAUS (<i>f.</i>), praise.	ORATIO (<i>f.</i>), prayer.
Nominative	virtus	laus	oratio
Vocative ..	virtus	laus	oratio
Accusative ..	virtutem	laudem	orationem
Genitive ..	virtutis	laudis	orationis
Dative ..	virtuti	laudi	orationi
Ablative ..	virtute	laude	oratione

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Christiani sunt milites Christi. 2. Laudem et amorem Deo damus. 3. Maria est Virgo Virginum. 4. Pax vobiscum. 5. Exaudi, Domine, orationem meam. 6. Milites bellum saepe amant. 7. Deus pacem suam nobis dat, et ducet nos in viam sanctam. 8. Virtutem Sanctorum laudamus. 9. Milites pugnant pro patriâ. 10. Laus Deo semper. 11. Videbimus milites in viis et agris. 12. Pueri amant milites. 13. Da nobis pacem tuam, Domine. 14. Mulieres laudant milites. 15. Oramus pro mulieribus quia miserae sunt. 16. Ad te venimus, Maria, Virgo Virginum. 17. Amamus te, O puer, quia bonus es.

* For those nouns which form their Genitive Plural in **-ium** see note on page 88.

18. Deus audiet orationes nostras. 19. Amamus beatam Mariam semper Virginem. 20. Laudo virtutem militum Christianorum.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

VOCABULARY.

pater, patris (*m.*), father.
mater, matris (*f.*), mother.
panis, panis (*m.*), bread, loaf.
mors, mortis (*f.*), death.
hodiē, to-day.

illuminatio, illuminatio (*f.*), light.
quotidianus, daily.
donare, to grant, give.
et, also, as.
cras, to-morrow.

1. Diligam te, Domine, virtus mea. 2. Dominus illuminatio mea. 3. Panem de coelo das nobis, Domine. 4. Dona nobis pacem. 5. Maria est Mater Dei. 6. Milites Christiani pugnant pro Christo. 7. Deus est Pater noster. 8. Ecce panis Angelorum. 9. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodiē. 10. Cras videbimus mulieres et puellas. 11. Post mortem est vita aeterna. 12. Diligimus Matrem Christi. 13. Dominus vitam in patriā nobis donat. 14. Sicut in coelo et in terrā. 15. Sancta Maria, ora pro nobis, nunc et in horā mortis nostrae. 16. Nunc Christus nos relinquit et vadit ad patrem. 17. Hodiē ludimus in agris, sed cras vademus ad bellum. 18. Regina dat panem puellis et pueris. 19. Deus panem quotidianum nobis dat. 20. Dominus illuminatio mea est, quem timebo? 21. Deus vitam aeternam post mortem nobis dat. 22. Cur mortem timeamus? 23. Milites pugnant pro reginā et patriā. 24. Debemus adjuvare milites pecuniā et pane. 25. Cras videbimus reginam.

EXERCISE XL.

VOCABULARY.

veritas, veritatis (*f.*), truth.
lux, lucis (*f.*), light.
vox, vocis (*f.*), voice.
salve, hail!
auctor, auctoris (*m.*), author.
soror, sororis (*f.*), sister.

qui (*relative pronoun*), who.
manere, to remain, abide, endure.
incensum, incensi (*n.*), incense.
peccator, peccatoris (*m. or f.*), a sinner.
confessor, confessoris (*m.*), a confessor.
honor, honoris (*m.*), honour.

1. Veritas Domini manebit in aeternum. 2. Incensum ascendit ad Dominum. 3. Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccata mundi, dona nobis pacem. 4. Pater noster, qui es in coelis. 5. Christus est lux mundi. 6. Angeli vocem Domini audire possunt. 7. Grātiā agam Domino qui liberat me a malo. 8. Beatus est vir qui sperat in Domino. 9. Sancta Maria, Mater Dei, ora pro nobis peccatoribus, nunc et in horā mortis nostrae. 10. Domine, Deus virtutum, exaudi orationem meam. 11. Martyres et Con-

fessóres, oráte pro nobis. 12. Honórem et amórem Deo dábimus. 13. Jesus est Auctor vitæ nostræ. 14. Salve Regína, Mater misericórdiæ. 15. Ancílla regíne est soror magístri. 16. Nos peccatóres clamámus ad te, Dómine. 17. Lucem stellárum vidére póssumus. 18. Deus veritátem et virtútem amat. 19. Manébo cum soróribus meis in agris. 20. Mílites, qui pugnant in viis, sunt boni.

EXERCISE XLI.

VOCABULARY.

ovis, ovis (*f.*), sheep.

ego, I.

tu, thou.

mons, montis (*m.*), mountain.

tibi (*Dative of tu*), to thee.

mihi (*Dative of ego*), to me.

1. Grátias ágimus tibi, propter magnam glóriam tuam. 2. Dona mihi pacem tuam. 3. De profúndis clamábo ad te, Dómine; Dómine, exaúdi vocem meam. 4. In horâ mortis meæ voca me, et jube me veníre ad te, Dómine. 5. Ad montes levábo óculos meos. 6. Fémina longam fábulam mihi narrábat. 7. Laudáte, púeri, Dóminum; et grátias Deo ágite. 8. Ego sum pastor bonus, et cognósco oves meas, et cognóscunt me meæ. 9. Ducam te ad montem sanctum meum. 10. Deus mittet nobis lucem suam et veritátem. 11. Pastórem qui oves suas custódit laudámus. 12. María est Regína Confessórum et Mártyrum et Angelórum. 13. Soror mea parva me amat. 14. Osténde mihi vias tuas, Domine. 15. Montes pátriæ nostræ sunt magni. 16. Sancti stant ante thronum Dei. 17. Tu solus es Sanctus, tu solus Dóminus. 18. Deus mihi dabit pacem suam. 19. Bonos et justos nunquam timémus. 20. Resurgémus post mortem, et ascendémus ad coelum.

SECTION XX.

Neuter Nouns of the 3rd Declension.

	NOMEN, a name.		OPUS, a work.	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nominative ..	nomen	nómina	opus	ópera
Vocative ..	nomen	nómina	opus	ópera
Accusative ..	nomen	nómina	opus	ópera
Genitive ..	nóminis	nóminum	óperis	óperum
Dative ..	nómini	nomínibus	óperi	opéribus
Ablative ..	nómine	nomínibus	ópere	opéribus

N.B.—The Accusative (singular and plural) of all Neuter nouns is the same as the Nominative.

EXERCISE XLII.

VOCABULARY.

corpus, cōrporis (<i>n.</i>), body.	lumen, lūminis (<i>n.</i>), light.
mare, maris (<i>n.</i>), sea (<i>Abt. mari</i>).	altāre, altāris (<i>n.</i>), altar.
cor, cordis (<i>n.</i>), heart.	os, oris (<i>n.</i>), mouth, face.

1. Laudāte Dōminum, pūeri; laudāte nomen Dōmini. 2. *María* est stella maris. 3. Panis noster est Corpus Dōmini. 4. *Ángeli* stant ante altāre Dōmini. 5. Mare saepe timémus. 6. Benedíctus qui venit in nómine Dōmini. 7. Laudábo Dōminum toto corde meo. 8. Lumen de Lúmine. 9. Dōminus est in corde tuo. 10. Dōminum laudábo ore meo. 11. Lúmina in coelis videmus. 12. Laudábo ópera Dei. 13. Amámus et timémus Sanctum Nomen tuum, Dómine. 14. Cor míltis est pium et bonum. 15. In nómine Dōmini nostri Jesu Christi surgo. 16. Laudábimus nomen Dōmini. 17. Soróres meae habent multa nómina. 18. Surgémus et stábimus ante altāre Dei. 19. Aquae maris sunt latae et profundae. 20. Adorámus et benedicimus te, Dómine, Redēptor mundi.

EXERCISE XLIII.

VOCABULARY.

sanguis, sánguinis (<i>m.</i>), blood.	vulnus, vúlneris (<i>n.</i>), a wound.
homo, hómínis (<i>m.</i>), a man.	latus, láteris (<i>n.</i>), a side.
crux, crucis (<i>f.</i>), a cross.	abscondere , to hide.
intra (<i>Acc.</i>), within.	pendere , to hang.
spina, spinæ (<i>f.</i>), a thorn.	lavare , to wash.

1. Adorámus Corpus et Sanguinem Christi. 2. Aqua láteris Christi, lava me. 3. Intra vúlnera tua abscondé me. 4. In horá mortis meae voca me. 5. Et jube me veníre ad te. 6. Jesus Christus venit in mundum. 7. Adorámus vúlnera Christi. 8. Jesus Christus pendet in cruce pro hómíne. 9. Jesus habet corónam spinárum. 10. Adorámus crucem sanctam Christi. 11. Coróna Christi habet multas spinas. 12. Adorámus vúlnera in látere Christi. 13. Corpus Dōmini est panis noster. 14. Surgam et vadam ad patrem meum. 15. Córpora nostra in aquis maris lavábimus. 16. Púeri apériunt ora et cantant. 17. Hómines sunt peccatóres. 18. Miles habet vulnus in látere suo. 19. Crux stat in monte sancto. 20. Nomen Dōmini semper amáre debémus.

EXERCISE XLIV.

VOCABULARY.

tempus, téporis (*n.*), time.
caput, cápitis (*n.*), head.
signum, signi (*n.*), a sign.
robur, robóris (*n.*), strength.
solum (*adverb*), alone.
in (*Abl.*), among.

salus, salútis (*f.*), salvation, health.
sacerdos, sacerdotis (*m.*), a priest.
signare, to sign.
adjutórium, adjutórii (*n.*), help.
fer (*Imperative*), bring.
per (*Acc.*), through, by.

1. Ave María, grátia plena, Dóminus tecum; benedícta tu in muliéribus. 2. Da robur, fer auxílium. 3. Per signum crucis ab inimícis nostris líbera nos, Dómine. 4. Sacerdos stat ante altáre. 5. Adjutórium nostrum est in nómine Dómini. 6. Jesus Christus venit per aquam et sánguinem: non in aquâ solâ, sed in aquâ et sángine. 7. Sacerdos signat nos signo crucis. 8. Sacerdos dat nobis Corpus Dómini nostri. 9. In tempóribus perículi hómnes semper clamant ad Deum. 10. Fer aquam ad me, serve. 11. Divínium auxílium manébit semper nobíscum. 12. Osténde nobis, Dómine, misericórdiam tuam. 13. Debémus nunquam timére ópera justórum. 14. Jesus habet corónam spinárum in cápite suo. 15. In Cruce Dómini nostri Jesu Christi est salus nostra. 16. Dóminus illuminátio mea et salus mea, quem timébo? 17. Sacerdótes stant ante altáre et grátias Deo agunt. 18. Per crucem sanctam tuam, líbera nos, Dómine. 19. Sacerdos surgit et stat ante altáre. 20. Lavábimus peccáta nostra in sángine Agni. 21. Deus est robur et auxílium nostrum. 22. Pastóres oves in agris custódiunt. 23. Ópera Dei sunt bona et magna. 24. Quis non laudat pópulum bonum? 25. Líbera nos, Dómine, a malo et perículo.

SECTION XXI.

Adjectives of the 3rd Declension.

Adjectives of the 3rd Declension are declined very similarly to the nouns. The Masculine and Feminine endings are the same, and the Neuter differs only in the first three cases, and not always then. The majority of 3rd Declension Adjectives terminate in **-is** or **-ens**. The Ablative singular (all genders) ends in **-i**, and the Genitive Plural in **-ium**.

TRISTIS, sad.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nominative ..	tristis	triste	tristes	tristia
Vocative ..	tristis	triste	tristes	tristia
Accusative ..	tristem	triste	tristes	tristia
Genitive ..	tristis	tristis	tristium	tristium
Dative ..	tristi	tristi	tristibus	tristibus
Ablative ..	tristi	tristi	tristibus	tristibus

EXERCISE XLV.**VOCABULARY.****dulcis, sweet.****fortis, brave.****omnis, all.****brevis, short.****amābilis, amiable, lovable.****fidēlis, faithful.****hūmilis, humble.****gens, gentis (f.), gentile, nation.**

1. Vita nostra est brevis. 2. Milites sunt fortes qui pugnant pro nobis. 3. Laudáte Dóminum, omnes gentes, laudáte Dóminum, omnes pópuli. 4. Ómnia ópera Dei sunt bona. 5. Amámus Mariám, Matrem amábilem. 6. Cur es tristis? 7. Da nobis ómnibus, O Dómine, vitam aetérnam. 8. Per ómnia saécula saeculórum. 9. Omnes hómīnes possunt laudáre Deum. 10. Ancillae Dómini sunt hūmiles. 11. O dulcis Virgo María, ora pro nobis. 12. O Jesu dulcis, O Jesu pie. 13. María est auxiliūm fidélium. 14. Ánimae fidélium sunt in pace. 15. Líbera nos, Dómine, ab ómnibus perículis. 16. Brevem vitam in terrā habémus. 17. Omnes púeri ludunt in agris. 18. Puéllas dulces et amábiles amámus. 19. Omnes gentes laudant Dóminum. 20. Ancillae regínae sunt fidéles et hūmiles.

POTENS, powerful.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nominative ..	potens	potens	poténtes	poténtia
Vocative ..	potens	potens	poténtes	poténtia
Accusative ..	poténtem	potens	poténtes	poténtia
Genitive ..	poténtis	poténtis	poténtium	poténtium
Dative ..	poténti	poténti	poténtibus	poténtibus
Ablative ..	poténti	poténti	poténtibus	poténtibus

EXERCISE XLVI.

VOCABULARY.

prudens, prudent.
sápiens, wise.
crédere, to believe.

omnipotens, all-powerful, almighty.
clemens, merciful, kind.
creátor, **creatóris** (*m.*), creator.

1. Deus est omnípotens. 2. María est clemens. 3. Ópera Dei sunt poténtia. 4. Beáti sunt hómines qui sunt prudéntes. 5. María est clemens et sápiens. 6. Vox sacerdotís est dulcis et potens. 7. Prudéntes sunt hómines qui in viis Dómini ámbulant. 8. Deus est Pater omnípotens. 9. Omnes ángeli prótegent nos. 10. Verba magístri sunt prudéntia et poténtia. 11. Credo in Deum, Patrem omnípoténtem, Creatórem coeli et terrae. 12. Christus sedet ad dexteram Dei, Patris omnípoténtis. 13. Deus regnábít per ómnia saécula. 14. Omnes sacerdotes stabant ante altáre. 15. Ad Mariám, Vírginem poténtem, clamámus. 16. Custódi ómnia verba Dei in corde tuo. 17. Magístri non sunt cleméntes, quia culpant púeros bonos. 18. Laudámus mártýres qui sunt fortes et boni. 19. Vocem poténtem magístri audíre póssumus. 20. Laudámus verba sapiéntia tua.

FELIX, happy.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nominative ..	felix	felix	felices	felicia
Vocative ..	felix	felix	felices	felicia
Accusative ..	felícem	felix	felices	felicia
Genitive ..	felícis	felícis	felícium	felícium
Dative ..	felíci	felíci	felícibus	felícibus
Ablative ..	felíci	felíci	felícibus	felícibus

EXERCISE XLVII.

VOCABULARY.

supplex, suppliant.
velox, swift.
audax, bold.
infélix, unhappy.
si, if.

civitas, **civitatís** (*f.*), a city.
núntius, **núntii** (*m.*), a messenger.
avis, **avis** (*f.*), a bird.
statim, immediately.
voláre, to fly.

1. Si felix es, cur fles ? 2. Puellae supplices orant ante altäre. 3. Si audaces estis, montem statim ascendetis. 4. Nuntius velox veniebat in civitatem. 5. Ancillae erant infelices quia pater in bello pugnabat. 6. Aves veloces in coelis volabant. 7. Alae avis sunt pulchrae. 8. Si laetus es, non debes flere. 9. In bello milites sunt fortes, sed in pace mortem saepe timent. 10. Verba tua sunt audacia, sed cor tuum est malum. 11. Si sapiens es, ad civitatem statim venies. 12. Mittam nuntios veloces ad reginam. 13. Regina debet adjuvare mulieres supplices. 14. Puellae sunt infelices et orant ante altäre. 15. Pastores custodiabant oves et agnos in agris. 16. Milites sunt audaces et fortes. 17. Tu es audax sed non sapiens. 18. Mulieres flebant quia vulnera militum videbant. 19. Aves volant, sed oves ambulant. 20. Verba sacerdotis sunt sapientia.

SECTION XXII.

Fourth Declension Nouns.

		GRADUS, a step (m.).		GENU, a knee (n.).	
		Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nominative ..		gradus	gradus	genu	génua
Vocative ..		gradus	gradus	genu	génua
Accusative ..		gradum	gradus	genu	génua
Genitive ..		gradus	gráduum	genus	génuum
Dative ..		grádui	grádibus	genu	génibus
Ablative ..		gradu	grádibus	genu	génibus

EXERCISE XLVIII.

VOCABULARY.

fluctus (4),* a wave (m.).†

conspéctus (4), sight (m.).

manus (4), a hand (f.).

cornu (4), a horn (n.).

exercitus (4), an army, host (m.).

spiritus (4), breath, spirit (m.).

pōnere, to place, lay down.

suscipere, to receive, undertake.

1. Glória Patri et Fílio et Spíritui Sancto. 2. Dómine Jesu, súscipe spíritum meum. 3. Cur est vultus tuus tristis ? 4. Pater, in manus tuas comméndo spíritum meum. 5. Exér-

* In future (4) after a noun denotes 4th Declension, and (2) 2nd Declension.

† Most nouns of the 4th Declension are masculine in gender.

citus Mártyrum Deum laudat. 6. Apóstolus erat plenus Spíritu Sancto. 7. Sumus milites in exercitu Christi. 8. Súscipe, Dómine, oratióem meam. 9. Sacérdos ponit manus suas in capite puéllae parvae. 10. Stamus in conspéctu Dómini. 11. Exércitus Dómini vadunt ad bellum. 12. Cras vidébimus exércitum. 13. Cur times fluctus maris? 14. Vultus mártýris erat tristis sed fortis. 15. Dóminus vobíscum: et cum spíritu tuo. 16. Fluctus maris puéllas parvas terrent. 17. Dóminus súscipit oratióes nostras. 18. Laudámus exércitum mártýrum. 19. Justórum ánimae in manu Dei sunt. 20. Puélla parva tenébat avem mórtuam in manu suâ.

SECTION XXIII.

Fifth Declension Nouns.

DIES, a day (*f.*)*

			<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nominative	..	..	dies	dies
Vocative	..	..	dies	dies
Accusative	..	..	diem	dies
Genitive	..	..	diéi	diérum
Dative	..	..	diéi	diébus
Ablative	..	..	dié	diébus

EXERCISE XLIX.

VOCABULARY.

fáciēs (5), face (*f.*).fídes (5), faith (*f.*).res (5), a thing, matter (*f.*).spes (5), hope (*f.*).

1. Ad Maríam, spem nostram, clamámus. 2. Fides tua est bona. 3. Apóstoli vidébant faciém Dómini. 4. Multae res nos terrent. 5. Exércitus Dómini sunt magni. 6. Quis faciém Dei potest vidére? 7. Manébamus in spe Dómini. 8. Fides tua erat salus tua. 9. Jesus vidébat fidem mulieris. 10. Puéllae parvae timent multas res. 11. Deus cognóscit fidem pópuli. 12. Sacérdos ponébat manus suas in cápite púeri parvi. 13. In-

* All 5th Declension nouns are feminine, though in Classical Latin **dies** is treated chiefly as masculine.

cénsum benedictum ascendit ad Dóminum. 14. Oratiónes nostrae sicut incénsum in conspéctu Dómini sunt. 15. Sacerdos levat manus ad coelum. 16. Ángelus stat a dexterâ altáris incénsi. 17. Súscipe, sancte Pater, omnípotens, aetérne Deus, oratiónes nostras. 18. Christus véniet cum glóriâ judicáre vivos et mórtuos. 19. Credo in Spíritum sanctum. 20. Propter nos hómines, et propter nostram salútem Christus descendit de coelis.

EXERCISE L.

VOCABULARY.

baptizáre, to baptize.
cathólicus (*adj.*), catholic.
gaudére, to rejoice.
conturbáre, to disquiet.
laetificáre, to make glad.

réquies, **requiúi** or **requiétis** (*f.*), rest.
Ecclésia (1), Church (*f.*).
quarē ? wherefore ?
emittere, to send forth.
juvéntus, **juventútis** (*f.*), youth.

1. Baptízo te in nómine Patris et Fílii et Spíritus Sancti.
 2. Réquiem aetérnam dona mórtuis, Dómine. 3. Credo in Sanctam Cathólicam Ecclésiám. 4. Emítte lucem tuam, et veritátem tuam. 5. Deus laetificat juventútem meam. 6. Quarē tristis es, ánima mea, et quarē contúrbas me ? 7. Spera in Deo, qui est salus vultus tui. 8. Adjutórium nostrum est in nómine Dómini. 9. Deus te ducet ad vitam aetérnam. 10. Deus est Creátor terrae. 11. Ego sum servus, et fílius soróris tuae. 12. Stamus in conspéctu omnis pópuli. 13. Ante lucem ad civitátem veniémus. 14. Tu es sacerdos in aetérnum. 15. Dómine Jesu Christe, libera ánimas ómnium fidélium. 16. In princípío erat Verbum. 17. Ópera Dómini laetificant cor meum. 18. Gaudéte, púeri, gaudéte et cantáte. 19. Sacerdos te baptizábit. 20. Deus emittet lucem sanctam suam in Ecclésiám Cathólicam. 21. Deus illúminat óculos omnis hóminis qui venit in mundum. 22. Vidébimus glóriam Patris. 23. Ángeli gaudent et Dóminum laudant. 24. Ángelus Dómini descendit de coelo. 25. Sacerdos levábit manus suas et benedícet pópulum. 26. Omnes gentes laudábunt Mariám. 27. Veníte, fílii, audíte me; docébo vos amórem Dómini. 28. Deus amat húmílem ancíllam. 29. Petrus et Paulus docent nos ópera Dómini. 30. Da pacem, Dómine, in diébus nostris, quia tu solus pugnás pro nobis.

SECTION XXIV.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses of 1st Conjugation.

<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
amávi	I have loved, <i>or</i> I loved	amáveram	I had loved
amavísti	thou hast loved, <i>or</i> thou lovedst	amáveras	thou hadst loved
amávit	he has loved, <i>or</i> he loved	amáverat	he had loved
amávimus	we have loved, <i>or</i> we loved	amáverámus	we had loved
amavístis	you have loved, <i>or</i> you loved	amáverátis	you had loved
amavérunt	they have loved, <i>or</i> they loved	amáverant	they had loved

EXERCISE LI.

VOCABULARY.

verus (*adj.*), true.
eum, him.

rex, regis (*m.*), king.
domus (*f.*),* house (*f.*).

1. Dóminus amávit eum et ornávit eum. 2. Deus laetificávit juventútem meam. 3. Vera lux illuminávit mundum, et dextera Dei exaltávit me. 4. Laudáveram ómnia ópera Dómini. 5. Quis judicáverat pópulum? 6. De profúndis clamávi ad te, Dómine. 7. Levávi óculos meos ad montes. 8. Justi ambulavérunt in viis Dómini. 9. Sacerdos signáverat nos signo crucis. 10. Ancillae ornáverant altáre Dei. 11. Cantaverátis Dómino. 12. Deus adjúverat† eum et liberáverat eum. 13. Quis vocávit me? 14. Laudavísti ancillas et puéllas. 15. Cur culpavístis servos vestros? 16. Míletes pugnáverant pro pátriá. 17. Rex liberávit pópulum suum. 18. In Deo erat vita, et vita erat lux hóminum. 19. Domus Dómini est pulchra. 20. Veni, Sancte Spíritus, et emítte de coelo lucem sanctam tuam.

* **domus** forms Ablative Singular from 2nd Declension: **domo**.

† The Perfect of **adjúvo** is **adjúvi**, hence Pluperfect **adjúveram**.

SECTION XXIV (*Continued*).Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses of **MONĒRE** and **ESSE**.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
mónui monuisti mónuit monúimus monuistis monuérunt	monúeram monúeras monúerat monuerámus monuerátis monuérant	fui fuisti fuit fúimus fuistis fuérunt	fúeram fúeras fúerat fuerámus fuerátis fuérant

EXERCISE LII.

VOCABULARY.

vigiláre, to watch.

aedicáre, to build.

1. Fémina mónuit puéllas. 2. Rex fuit tristis. 3. Magíster dócuit púeros. 4. Dóminus aedicávit domum. 5. Servi vigiláverunt. 6. Puélla ténuít avem mórtuam in manu suá. 7. Quis monúerat regínam? 8. Quem timuístis? 9. Fúeram laeta. 10. Quid timuístis? 11. Cujus servum culpavísti? 12. Ancíllae fuérunt bonae et laetae. 13. Verba nuntii fuérunt audácia. 14. Servi vigiláverunt in jánuá ecclésiæ. 15. Déxtera Dómini ténuít me. 16. Véritas Dómini manet in aetérnum. 17. Dóminus nos judicávit. 18. Verba regínæ terrúerant puéllam. 19. Quid regína mónuit? 20. Cur tristis fuísti?

SECTION XXV.

Future-Perfect Tenses of **AMÁRE**, **MONĒRE**, and **ESSE**.

amávero amáveris amáverit amavérimus amavéritis amáverint	monúero monúeris monúerit monuérimus monuéritis monuérint	fúero fúeris fúerit fuérimus fuéritis fúerint
--	--	--

English: *I shall have loved, I shall have advised, I shall have been*, etc.

N.B.—The Future-Perfect tense is often used after *si*, *if*, and *nisi*, *unless*, but the English idiom requires a present or simple future.

EXERCISE LIII.

VOCABULARY.

vanus (*adj.*), vain.
in vanum, in vain.
nisi, unless.

laboráre, to work, labour.
frustra, in vain.
heréditas, **hereditátis** (*f.*), heritage.

1. Nisi Dóminus aedificáverit domum, in vanum laboravérunt qui aedificant domum. 2. Nisi Dóminus illumináverit óculos tuos, non vidébis ópera Dei. 3. Ecce, filii sunt heréditas Dómini. 4. Vanum est vobis súrgere ante lucem. 5. Pax est in virtúte Dómini. 6. Si vos frustra monúero, vos púniam. 7. Quis aedificávit civitátem? 8. Sancti laboravérunt in nómine Dómini. 9. Multi servi et ministri aedificavérunt civitátem. 10. Cívitas est heréditas pópuli. 11. Ángelus Dómini nuntiávit Maríae. 12. Ecce nunc benedicite Dóminum, omnes servi Dómini, qui statis in óstio domus Dei nostri. 13. Ángeli custódient nos in ómnibus viis nostris. 14. Deus me liberávit, et adjuvábít me in ómnibus perículis. 15. Clamábít ad me et ego exaúdiam eum. 16. In te, Dómine, sperávi. 17. Pastóres vigilábant in agris. 18. Deus nobis signum dabit. 19. Nisi Dóminus aedificáverit civitátem, hómínes in vanum laboravérunt. 20. Ego baptízo vos in aquâ; Dóminus vos baptizábít in Spíritu Sancto.

SECTION XXVI.

Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses of RÉGERE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
rexí rexísti rexít rexímus rexístis rexérunt	réxero réxeris réxerit rexérimus rexerítis rexerint	réxeram réxeras rexerat rexerámus rexerátis rexerant

N.B.—The Perfect Tense of most 3rd Conjugation verbs is irregular, and usually involves a change of stem. The present stem may be found by removing the **-ere** of the Infinitive; thus the stem of **régere** is **reg-**. Most verbs whose stem ends in **g** or **c** change that letter into **x** to form the perfect stem, as in **régere**.

In Exercise LIV only verbs which form their perfect in **x** are used.

EXERCISE LIV.

1. Deus duxit me ad montem sanctum suum. 2. Regina rexit in civitate. 3. Quid dixisti, O puer? 4. Christus resurrexit a mortuis. 5. Pastor bonus dilexit oves suas. 6. Deus benedixit populum suum. 7. Cur servus puellam ad agros duxerat? 8. Sacerdos pueros benedixerat. 9. Non dimittam te, nisi benedixeris me. 10. Angelus dixit ad eum, Ego sum Gabriel, qui sto ante Deum. 11. Maria dixit, exaltavit humiles Dominus. 12. Ministri frustra vigilaverunt. 13. Deus nos liberavit a manu inimicorum nostrorum. 14. Vobis dixi, diligite inimicos vestros. 15. Servi duxerunt pueros ad civitatem. 16. Videbitis signa in coelo. 17. Bonus pastor animam suam dat pro ovibus suis. 18. Omnes gentes gaudabant in nomine Domini. 19. Si pueros ad agros duxeritis, vos laudabo. 20. Regina rexit multos annos in civitate.

SECTION XXVII.

Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses of AUDIRE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
audivi audivisti audivit audivimus audivistis audiverunt	audivero audiveris audiverit audiverimus audiveritis audiverint	audiveram audiveras audiverat audiveramus audiveratis audiverant

EXERCISE LV.

VOCABULARY.

dolor, doloris (*m.*), grief.

frater, fratris (*m.*), a brother.

flumen, fluminis (*n.*), a river.

superare, to overcome.

manducare, to eat.

proximus (2), a neighbour.

impetus (4), power, attack.

habitare, to dwell.

1. Nisi Dominus custodiverit domum, frustra vigilat qui custodit domum. 2. Populus audivit vocem regis. 3. Manducavimus panem doloris. 4. Populus habitaverat in civitate. 5. Propter fratres meos et proximos dicam pacem de te. 6. Quis est proximus meus? 7. Magister puniverat pueros

malos. 8. Quis custodívit jánuam? 9. Non audiverámus verba regínae. 10. Mílites custodíverant jánuam domus. 11. Quis fratrem meum, qui tristis est, adjuvábít? 12. Superávimus inimícos nostros. 13. Ímpetus flúminis laetíficat civitátem Dei. 14. Quare punivísti púeros qui ludébant in agris? 15. Próximos nostros amáre debémus. 16. Manducámus panem angelórum. 17. Ecce mittam ángelum meum ante faciém tuam, qui ducet te in vias pacis. 18. Docéte omnes gentes, et baptizáte in nómine Patris et Fílii et Spíritus Sancti. 19. Ángelus dixit muliéríbus, Jesus surréxit, sicut dixit. 20. Mulíeres vigilábant in jánuâ domus. 21. Multi sancti surrexérunt a mórtuis. 22. Quis audívit vocem mulieris? 23. Quid mandúcas? 24. Habitábamus in civitáte cum frátribus nostris. 25. Fluctus maris terrúerant omnes mulíeres. 26. Non audiverámus eum: quid díxerat? 27. Dolor mulíerum erat magnus. 28. Ímpetus flúminis térruit puéllas. 29. Cras vidébimus fratrem nostrum et sorórem tuam. 30. Quem mittes ad civitátem? Mittam núntium velócem.

SECTION XXVIII.

Some 2nd Conjugation Verbs with Irregular Perfects.

vidére, perfect vidi.
sedére, perfect sedi.
flere, perfect flevi.

jubére, perfect jussi.
manére, perfect mansi.
pendére, perfect pepéndi.

EXERCISE LVI.

VOCABULARY.

portáre, to carry.
ignis, ignis (m.), fire.
accéndere, to kindle.

donum (2), a gift, offering.
arbor, árboris (f.), a tree.
replére, to fill.

1. Mulíeres sedérunt et flevérunt. 2. Veni Sancte Spíritus, reple corda fidélium. 3. Accénde in nobis ignem amóris tui. 4. Vídimus mílites in agris. 5. Jesus pepéndit in árbore crucis. 6. Cur mansísti in viâ? 7. Regína jussit núntium vádere ad civitátem. 8. Multae árbores in agris sunt. 9. Cur flevísti? 10. Regína vidit dolórem mulíerum. 11. Spíritus Sanctus replet corda nostra. 12. Ignem in móntibus accendémus. 13. Cum Sanctis tuis laudábo te in saécula saeculórum. 14. Puéllae dona mittébant ad reginam magnam. 15. Quid portas? Porto librum et multas epístolas. 16. Habitámus in adjutório Dei. 17. Dóminus custódiét nos ut pupíllam óculi, et sub umbrâ

alárum suárum próteget nos. 18. Stabámus in umbrá árborum in agris. 19. Divínium auxiliúm manébit semper nobíscum. 20. Te laudámus, Dómine, Rex aetérnae glóriæ.

Perfects of some common 3rd Conjugation Verbs.

mittere, *perfect* misi.
ágere, *perfect* egi.
relinquere, *perfect* reliqui.
scribere, *perfect* scripsi.
convèrtere, *perfect* convèrti.

cognóscere, *perfect* cognóvi.
deféndere, *perfect* deféndi.
ascéndere, *perfect* ascéndi.
descéndere, *perfect* descéndi.
abscéndere, *perfect* abscéndi.

EXERCISE LVII.

VOCABULARY.

porta (1), gate, door.

almus (*adj.*), sweet, dear.

1. Quid scripsísti? 2. Jesus ascéndit in coelos. 3. Ángeli descendérunt ad terram. 4. Regina convértit óculos suos ad pópulum. 5. Pastor cognóvit oves suas. 6. Quid reliquísti in agro? 7. Deus misit ángelum suum ad Mariám. 8. Ave maris stella, Dei mater alma, ad te omnes gentes clamant. 9. Ancilla scripsit multas epístolas. 10. Quid abscondísti?

Some 4th Conjugation Verbs with Irregular Perfects.

venire, *perfect* veni.
salire, *perfect* sálui, to leap.

aperire, *perfect* apériui.
sentire, *perfect* sensi, to feel.

11. Núntii venérunt ad regínam. 12. Servi aperuérunt portas civitatís. 13. Puer dolórem sensit. 14. Cur venísti? 15. Púeri saluérunt in aquam. 16. Quis apériuit portam domus? 17. Ancilla grátias Deo egit. 18. Núntii ad regínam óculos suos convertérunt. 19. Ángeli nos ab omni perículo defendérunt. 20. Jesus venit judicáre vivos et mórtuos.

SECTION XXIX.

Present Passive of 1st and 2nd Conjugations.

amor	I am loved <i>or</i> being loved	móneor	I am advised <i>or</i> being advised
amáris	thou art loved, etc.	monéris	thou art advised, etc.
amátur	he is loved, etc.	monétur	he is advised, etc.
amámur	we are loved, etc.	monémur	we are advised, etc.
amámmini	you are loved, etc.	monémini	you are advised, etc.
amántur	they are loved, etc.	monéntur	they are advised, etc.

EXERCISE LVIII.

VOCABULARY.

paúperes (*plur.*), the poor.**a** (*or ab*), *with Abl.*, by.

1. Amámur a matre nostrâ. 2. Púeri monéntur a magistro.
 3. Exaltámur a Deo. 4. Paúperes adjuvántur a nobis.
 5. Puéllae laudántur a reginâ. 6. Maria amátur ab ómnibus
 géntibus. 7. Conturbámini ab inimícis vestris. 8. Puéllae
 parvae terréntur verbis* magístri. 9. Núntius jubétur veníre
 ad reginam. 10. Deus tímétur ab homínibus. 11. Oculi nostri
 illuminántur a Deo. 12. Adjuvámur a próximis nostris.
 13. Paúperes adjuvántur a mínistris reginae. 14. Verba
 regis nuntiántur pópulo. 15. Laudámur a magístris nostris.
 16. Sapiéntes púeri non terréntur verbis magistrórum malórum.
 17. Mulieres laudántur a reginâ magnâ. 18. Epístola portátur
 a servo reginae. 19. Timémur a púeris parvis. 20. Rex
 vidétur a nobis. 21. Puéllae parvae terréntur flúctibus maris.
 22. Liberámur a Deo. 23. Laudáris a magistro tuo. 24. Amor
 a matre meâ. 25. Timéris a filio tuo. 26. Monémini a reginâ.
 27. Adjuvámur ab ángelis. 28. Pecúnia datur paupéribus.
 29. Culpáris a muliere. 30. Puélla vocátur a matre suâ.

SECTION XXX.

Present Passive of 3rd and 4th Conjugations.

regor	aúdiōr
rógeris	audiris
régitur	audítur
régimur	audímur
regímini	audímini
regúntur	audiúntur

EXERCISE LIX.

VOCABULARY.

quóniam, since, that.
caro, carnis (*f.*), flesh.
peccáre, to sin.
nimis, exceedingly.

nox, noctis (*f.*), night.
mandáre, to give charge to, entrust.
salutáre, salutáris (*n.*), salvation.
longitúdo, longitúdinis (*f.*), length.

* The preposition **ab**, *by*, is not inserted before things, only before persons: see page 114.

1. Protégimur ab ángelis. 2. Verba reginae audiúntur ab ómnibus. 3. Portae custodiúntur a servis. 4. Púeri puniúntur a magistro. 5. Núntius mittitur ad reginam. 6. Epístola scríbitur a puellâ parvâ. 7. Quóniam in me sperávit, liberábo eum: prótegam eum, quóniam cognóvit nomen meum. 8. Longitúdine diérum replébo eum. 9. Osténdam pópulo salutáre meum. 10. Quóniam Ángelis suis mandavit de te, non debes timére. 11. Vidérunt óculi mei salutáre tuum. 12. Terra régitur a rege. 13. Alma mater, tu es stella maris. 14. Portae a servis aperíúntur. 15. Puer sepelítur a muliéribus. 16. Nimis peccávimus in conspéctu Dómini. 17. Credo in resurrectionem* carnis. 18. Nox est pulchra. 19. Peccávi nimis, meâ culpâ. 20. Ab Ángelis semper custodímur.

SECTION XXXI.

Imperfect Passive Tenses of all Four Conjugations.

amábar amabáris amabátur amabámur amabámini amabántur	monébar monebáris monebátur monebámur monebámini monebántur	regébar regebáris regebátur regebámur regebámini regebántur	audiébar audiebáris audiebátur audiebámur audiebámini audiebántur
--	--	--	--

N.B.—The English of the Imperfect passive is *I was being loved*, or *I used to be loved*, etc.

EXERCISE LX.

1. Protegebámur a servis reginae. 2. A magistro monebámini. 3. Terra a rege regebátur. 4. Timebáris a puéllis. 5. Paúperes adjuvabántur a muliéribus. 6. Portae a servis aperiebántur. 7. Fíliae reginae custodiebántur a milítibus. 8. Monebámur a rege et reginâ. 9. Laudabámur a magistro. 10. Núntius mittebátur ad reginam. 11. Puéllae parvae terrebantur flúctibus maris. 12. Servi liberabántur a reginâ. 13. Oves custodiebantur a pastóre. 14. Epístola scribebátur a púero parvo. 15. Puéllae felices erant quóniam a matre laudabántur. 16. Servi mittebántur in civitátem a rege. 17. Deus laudátur ómnibus opéribus suis. 18. Dona dabántur paupéribus a fíliis† regis. 19. Exaltámur a Deo. 20. Ópera mánuum nostrárum sunt bona.

* In future words which can be guessed will not be given in the vocabularies.

† Fíliis is Dative or Ablative plural of *filius*; the Dative and Ablative plural of *filia* being *filiabus*.

SECTION XXXII.

Future Passive Tenses of all Four Conjugations.

amábor amáberis amábitur amábimur amabímini amabúntur	monébor monéberis monébitur monébimur monebímini monebúntur	regar regéris regétur regémur regémini regéntur	aúdiar audiéris audiétur audiémur audiémini audiéntur
--	--	--	--

N.B.—English: *I shall be loved*, etc.

EXERCISE LXI.

VOCABULARY.

inclináre, to incline.
vivere, to live.
dormíre, to sleep.

auris, auris (*f.*), an ear.
flos, floris (*m.*), a flower.
únitas, unitátis (*f.*), unity.

1. Inclína, Dómine, ad me aurem tuam. 2. Qui vivit et regnat in unitáte Spíritus Sancti Deus, per ómnia saecula saeculórum. 3. Ánimae fidélium dórmunt in pace. 4. Verba magístri audiéntur ab ómnibus. 5. Portae custodiéntur a militibus et servis. 6. Protegémur ab Ángelis. 7. Deus ad nos aurem suam inclinábit. 8. Ab inimícis nostris conturbámur. 9. Paúperes adjuvabúntur a rege. 10. Portae aperiéntur a servis. 11. Vox tua non audiétur a pópulo. 12. Convérte nos, Deus, in viam pacis. 13. Deus nobis dabit noctem quiétam. 14. In manus tuas comméndo spíritum meum. 15. Véritas mea et misericórdia mea cum sanctis. 16. In nómine meo exaltábitur cornu sanctorum. 17. Ignem veni mittere in terram. 18. Dómine, Deus salútis meae, in die et nocte ad te clamávi. 19. Benedíctus es, Dómine, Deus patrum nostrórum, et laudábilis et gloriósus in saecula. 20. Benedíctum et sanctum est nomen glóriæ tuæ, et laudábile et gloriósum in saecula. 21. Ego clamávi, quóniam exaudivísti me, Deus: inclína aurem tuam, et exaúdi verba mea. 22. Sancti tui, Dómine, benedícant te, et glóriam regni tui dicant. 23. Regína ornábitur a puéllis multis flóribus. 24. Puélla parva dormiébat. 25. Vidébimus multos flores in agris. 26. Quis mittétur ad civitátem? 27. Nomen Dómini laudábitur ab ómnibus géntibus. 28. Culpáberis a magístro. 29. Timéberis a púeris parvis. 30. Non laudábor a rege.

SECTION XXXIII.

Comparison of Adjectives.

Adjectives are compared in Latin by adding **-ior** to the stem to form the **Comparative**, and **-issimus** for the **Superlative**: *e.g.*, **longus** (stem **long-**), **lóngior**, **longíssimus**; **tristis** (stem **trist-**), **trístior**, **tristíssimus**.

Declension of Comparative.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nominative ..	trístior	trístius	tristióres	tristióra
Vocative ..	trístior	trístius	tristióres	tristióra
Accusative ..	tristiórem	trístius	tristióres	tristióra
Genitive ..	tristióris	tristióris	tristiórum	tristiórum
Dative ..	tristióri	tristióri	tristióribus	tristióribus
Ablative ..	tristióre	tristióre	tristióribus	tristióribus

N.B.—The superlative is declined in the same way as ordinary 2nd Declension Adjectives in **-us**.

EXERCISE LXII.

VOCABULARY.

altus, high, tall, deep.
purus, pure.
castus, chaste.

quam, than (*followed by same case as that which precedes it*).
paráre, to prepare.

1. Mater est trístior quam fília. 2. Núntium velocíssimum ad civitátem mittam. 3. Nox sicut dies illuminábitur. 4. Virgo prudentíssima, ora pro nobis. 5. Laudábimus nomen Dei Altíssimi. 6. Virgo castíssima et puríssima, ora pro nobis. 7. Soror est áltior quam* frater. 8. Parábit vias Domini. 9. Manus tua tenébit me. 10. Quid est púlchrius quam virtus? 11. María est potentíssima ómnium sanctórum. 12. Quis est púlchrior quam soror tua? 13. Quid est trístius quam fácies magistri? 14. Frater tuus est sapientíssimus ómnium magistrórum.

* Direct comparison may also be expressed by the Ablative without **quam**—*e.g.*, **soror est áltior fratre**.

15. Rex est poténtior quam regína. 16. María est puríssima vírginum. 17. Paráte viam Dómini. 18. Vénimus ad altíssimum montem. 19. Soror tua est púlchrior quam mea. 20. Verba sacerdotís sunt sapientióra verbis magístri.

Some Adjectives which are Compared Irregularly.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
bonus	mélior	óptimus
magnus	major	máximus
parvus	minor	mínimus
malus	pejor	péssimus
multus	plus*	plúrimus

N.B.—All Adjectives in *-er* form their Superlative by adding *-rimus* to the positive—*e.g.*, *miser*, *misérrimus*; *pulcher*, *pulchérrimus*, etc.

EXERCISE LXIII.

VOCABULARY.

mundáre, to cleanse.

iníquus, unjust.

ímpius, wicked.

mundus, clean (*Adj.*).

créare, to create.

ámplius (*comp. adverb.*), yet more.

contra (*Acc.*), before, against.

aspérgere, to sprinkle.

hyssópum (2), hyssop.

iniquitas, iniquitátis (*f.*), iniquity.

1. Quóniam iniquitátem meam ego cognósco, et peccátum meum contra me est semper. 2. Aspérges me hyssópo et mundábor. 3. María est pulchérissima ómnium vírginum. 4. Ámplius lava me ab iniquitáte meá. 5. Cor mundum crea in me, Dómine. 6. Docébo iníquos vias tuas, et ímpii ad te converténtur. 7. Púeri sunt pejóres quam puéllae. 8. Liber meus est mínimus ómnium librórum. 9. Quid est mélius quam ambuláre in viis Dómini? 10. Quis est óptimus puerórum? 11. Peccávi, meá culpá, meá culpá, meá maximá culpá. 12. Os meum, Dómine, annuntiábit laudem tuam. 13. In mánibus suis Ángeli portábunt te. 14. Laudabámur a magístro sapientíssimo. 15. Regína donum servo misérrimo dabat. 16. Non nobis, Dómine, non nobis, sed nómini tuo da glóriam. 17. Tu solus sanctus, tu solus es altíssimus, Jesu Christe. 18. O sanctíssima Virgo María, ora pro nobis. 19. Quis est péssimus ómnium servórum? 20. Quis erat fidélior regi quam frater tuus?

* The comparative singular of *multus* is only found in the neuter.

SECTION XXXIV.

Past Participles.

Latin has only one Past Participle, the **Passive Participle**. Verbs of the 1st Conjugation which are regular form their past participles by adding **-tus** to the present stem:

amāre (stem **ama-**), *past participle*, **amātus**.
laudāre (stem **lauda-**), *past participle*, **laudātus**.

Regular verbs of the 2nd Conjugation form their past participles by removing the **e** of the stem, and adding **-itus**:

monēre (stem **mone-**), *past participle*, **mónitus**.
terrēre (stem **terre-**), *past participle*, **térritus**.

These participles decline in the same way as ordinary 2nd Declension Adjectives in **-us**—*e.g.* :

puer térritus, *a terrified boy* ; **puella térrita**, *a terrified girl*.

The Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Passive Tenses of all Verbs are formed from the past participle and the verb **esse**.

Perfect Passive of **AMÁRE**.

amātus sum	I was loved, <i>or</i> I have been loved
amātus es	thou wast loved, <i>or</i> thou hast been loved
amātus est	he was loved, <i>or</i> he has been loved
amāti sumus	we were loved, <i>or</i> we have been loved
amāti estis	you were loved, <i>or</i> you have been loved
amāti sunt	they were loved, <i>or</i> they have been loved

EXERCISE LXIV.

VOCABULARY.

bíbere, to drink.

potéstas, **potestátis** (*f.*), power.

1. Dixit Jesus discípulis suis, Data est mihi omnis potéstas in coelo et in terrâ.
2. Puéllae parvae amátae sunt a matre et patre.
3. Quis culpátus est a magistro ?
4. Cur laudátus es a reginâ ?
5. Dixit Jesus, Qui mandúcat meam carnem, et bibit meum sanguínem, in me manet, et qui mandúcet me, vivet propter me.
6. Opus púeri a magistro laudátum est.
7. Verba reginae culpáta sunt a rege.
8. Conturbáti sumus ab inimícis nostris.
9. Pecúnia data est paupéribus a puéllis.
10. Verba reginae nuntiáta sunt regi a servo.

Perfect Passive of **MONĒRE**.

mónitus sum	I was advised, <i>or</i> have been advised
mónitus es	thou wast advised, <i>or</i> hast been advised
mónitus est	he was advised, <i>or</i> has been advised
móniti sumus	we were advised, <i>or</i> have been advised
móniti estis	you were advised, <i>or</i> have been advised
móniti sunt	they were advised, <i>or</i> have been advised

11. Púeri térriti sunt verbis magístri. 12. Féminae a regínâ mónitae sunt. 13. Domus aedificáta est a fratre meo. 14. Puél-lae parvae térritae sunt flúctibus maris. 15. Pópulus a rege mónitus est. 16. Púeri signo crucis a sacerdoté signáti sunt. 17. Cor meum et caro mea gaudebant in Deo vivo. 18. Exaltáta est sancta Dei Mater. 19. Hódie María Virgo ad coelos ascéndit; gaudéte, quia cum Christo regnat in aetérnum. 20. Benedictus es, Dómine, in firmaménto coeli, et laudábilis et gloriósus in saécula.

SECTION XXXV.

Future-Perfect and Pluperfect Passive of **AMÁRE** and **MONĒRE**.

<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
amátus ero	amátus eram	mónitus ero	mónitus eram
amátus eris	amátus eras	mónitus eris	mónitus eras
amátus erit	amátus erat	mónitus erit	mónitus erat
amáti érimus	amáti erámus	móniti érimus	móniti erámus
amáti éritis	amáti erátis	móniti éritis	móniti erátis
amáti erunt	amáti erant	móniti erunt	móniti erant

N.B.—English of Future-Perfect Passive, *I shall have been loved*, etc.
English of Pluperfect Passive, *I had been loved*, etc.

EXERCISE LXV.

VOCABULARY.

bene (*adverb*), well.

male (*adverb*), badly.

juxta (*Acc.*), near.

doctus, *past part. of docére.*

visus, *past part. of vidére.*

jussus, *past part. of jubére.*

1. Núntius jussus est veníre ad regínam. 2. Púeri a magístro bene docti sunt. 3. Rex visus est a fratre meo. 4. Male doctus

es. 5. Et ecce Angelus Dómini stabat juxta pastóres. 6. Ángeli dixerunt, Glória in altíssimis Deo et in terrâ pax homínibus bonae voluntátis. 7. Regina visa erat ab ómnibus puéllis. 8. Nisi a reginâ mónitus eris, ad regem non póteris veníre. 9. Quis doctus erat a magistro ? 10. Visi eramus a muliéribus. 11. Nisi ad reginam venérítis, non adjuvabímmini. 12. Stabat Mater dolorósa juxta crucem. 13. Dícite nobis, púeri, quid vidístis in viis ? 14. A filio minístri bene doctus eras. 15. Multae árbores in agris visae sunt. 16. Domus male aedificáta erat. 17. Bene mónitus eris. 18. Jussus es ad me veníre. 19. Visus es a me. 20. Bene docti erátis.

SECTION XXXVI.

Past Participles of 3rd and 4th Conjugation Verbs.

The past participles of 3rd Conjugation Verbs are mostly irregular. *Régere* has past participle *rectus*, and most verbs whose stem ends in *g* or *c* have *-ctus* in the past participle—*e.g.*, *dicere, dictus* ; *dúcere, ductus* ; *resúrgere, resurréctus*, etc.

Fourth Conjugation Verbs regularly form their past participles in *-itus*, as *audíre, audítus* ; *puníre, púnitus* ; but a few are irregular—*e.g.*, *sepelíre, sepúltus* ; *aperíre, apértus*.

EXERCISE LXVI.

VOCABULARY.

relictus, past part. of relínquere.
cógnitus, past part. of cognóscere.
convérsus, past part. of convértere.

missus, past part. of mittere.
scriptus, past part. of scribere.
actus, past part. of ágere.

1. Núntius missus est ad civitátem. 2. Liber ad reginam missus est. 3. Multae epístolae scriptae sunt. 4. Grátiae Deo actae sunt. 5. Púeri mali púníti erant. 6. Servi mórtui sepúlti erant. 7. Óculi ómnium ad regem convérsi erant. 8. Ovis a pastóre suo cógnita est. 9. Libri a fratre meo scripti sunt. 10. Verba reginae ab ómnibus audíta sunt. 11. Ánimae fidélium in vias pacis ductae sunt. 12. Portae civitátis a servis apértae erant. 13. Libri in agris relícti sunt. 14. Puélla a muliere vocáta erat. 15. Parátum est cor meum, Dómine. 16. Si vocábor a féminâ, non aúdiam. 17. Stella in coelo a pastóribus visa est. 18. Servus ad regem ductus erat. 19. Hódie epístola scripta erit. 20. Conturbáti sumus ab inimícis nostris.

SECTION XXXVII.

Personal Pronouns.

	First Person.		Second Person.		Third Person.
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.	Singular and Plural.
Nominative	ego	nos	tu	vos	—
Vocative ..	—	—	tu	vos	—
Accusative ..	me	nos	te	vos	se
Genitive ..	mei	nostri*	tui	vestri*	sui
Dative ..	mihi	nobis	tibi	vobis	sibi
Ablative ..	me	nobis	te	vobis	se

N.B.—*se* is the Reflexive 3rd Personal Pronoun, and means **himself, herself, itself, or themselves.**

EXERCISE LXVII.

VOCABULARY.

nemo, néminis,† no one.
étiam, even, also.
hic (*adverb*), here.

memor, mémoris (*Adj.*), mindful
 (*followed by Genitive*).
immemor, forgetful (*Genitive*).

1. Ego sum resurréctio et vita: qui credit in me, etiam si mórtuus fúerit, vivit. 2. Dóminus est memor nostri. 3. Quis immemor vestri erit? 4. Tibi grátias ágimus, Dómine, propter magnam glóriam tuam. 5. Quis laudat se? 6. Nemo semper culpat se. 7. Ómnia óptima sibi semper dat. 8. Nemo est immemor sui. 9. Dómine, bonum est nobis hic esse. 10. Levavérunt óculos suos, sed néminem vidérunt, nisi solum Jesum. 11. Dóminus nos ducet in montem sanctíssimum suum. 12. Tibi dabo multa dona. 13. Mulieres erant immémores sui. 14. Puer vidit se in aquá flúminis. 15. Quis mihi librum dabit? 16. Te hic cras vidébimus. 17. Orábo pro vobis. 18. Nemo est memor mei. 19. Memor tui ero. 20. Soror mea ad te cras veniet.

* The forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used after numbers, or adjectives denoting number—*e.g.*, **multi nostrum**, *many of us*; **tres vestrum**, *three of you*. This is called the **Partitive Genitive**. The forms **nostri** and **vestri** are used for the **Objective Genitive**.

† The Genitive of **nemo** is rarely used.

Pronouns (Continued).**Third Person.**

	he, she, it.					
	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nominative ..	is*	ea	id	ei	eae	ea
Accusative ..	eum	eam	id	eos	eas	ea
Genitive ..	ejus	ejus	ejus	eórum	eárum	eórum
Dative ..	ei	ei	ei	eis	eis	eis
Ablative ..	eo	ea	eo	eis	eis	eis

EXERCISE LXVIII.**VOCABULARY.****adesse**, to be present.**offendere**, to dash, stumble.

1. Si ambuláverit in nocte, offéndit, quia lux non est in eo.
 2. Magíster adest, et vocat te. 3. Jesus vocávit eum ad se.
 4. Si veritátem dico vobis, quare non créditis mihi†? 5. Dicunt ei, Dómine, veni et vide. 6. Dicit eis, ecce homo. 7. In mundo erat, et mundus eum non cognóvit. 8. Deo grátias agam in conspéctu omnis pópuli ejus. 9. Dóminus exaúdiat me, si clamávero ad eum. 10. Multi dicunt, Quis osténdit nobis bona? 11. Grátias ágimus Deo propter magnam glóriam ejus. 12. Mit-témus núntium ad eos. 13. Per signum crucis, líbera eos, Dómine. 14. Deum adorámus et Fílium ejus. 15. Apérui os suum et docébat eos. 16. Vídimus mulíeres et fílias eárum. 17. Si puer bonus erit, librum ei dabo. 18. Qui mandúcat meam carnem, et bibit meum ságuinem, in me manet, et ego in eo. 19. Dixit ei Jesus, Quia vidísti me, Thoma, credidísti: beati qui non vidérunt, et credidérunt. 20. Stabant juxta crucem Jesu mater ejus, et soror matris ejus María Cléophae, et María Magdaléne.

* **is, ea, id**, may also be used as a demonstrative adjective = *that*: e.g., **is puer**, *that boy*.

† **Credo** is usually followed by the dative case.

SECTION XXXVIII.

The Demonstrative **HIC**.

	HIC, HAEC, HOC : this.					
	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nominative ..	hic	haec	hoc	hi	hae	haec
Accusative ..	hunc	hanc	hoc	hos	has	haec
Genitive ..	hujus	hujus	hujus	horum	harum	horum
Dative ..	huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
Ablative ..	hoc	hac	hoc	his	his	his

N.B.—**Hic** is used both **substantivally** and **adjectivally**—*e.g.*, **hic** = *this man*; **hic puer** = *this boy*; **haec** = *these things*, or *this*; **haec opera** = *these works*.

EXERCISE LXIX.

1. Hic est panis qui de coelis descendit. 2. Qui manducat hunc panem vivet in aeternum. 3. Hoc est testimónium, quóniam vitam aeternam dedit nobis Deus. 4. Haec vita in Fílio ejus est. 5. Hic est qui venit per aquam et sanguínem, Jesus Christus: non in aquâ solum, sed in aquâ et sanguine. 6. Multa non sunt scripta in libro hoc. 7. Hi sunt qui te amant. 8. Quis est hic puer qui haec dicit? 9. Hic est liber hujus púeri. 10. Manébitus multas dies in hac civitáte. 11. Libri horum puerórum sunt magni. 12. Propter hoc eum non vidi. 13. Magíster eum laudávit his verbis. 14. Ínnocens ego sum a ságuine justí hujus. 15. Hae puéllae sunt bonae. 16. Libros his púeris dabo. 17. In his tempóribus haec non póssumus dicere. 18. Non est hic*: surréxit sicut dixit. 19. Hunc púerum non culpo. 20. Laudabo has puéllas.

* Remember that **hic** can also mean *here*.

SECTION XXXIX.

The Demonstrative ILLE.

	ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD : that.					
	Singular.			Plural.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nominative ..	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
Accusative ..	illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illa
Genitive ..	illius	illius	illius	illorum	illarum	illorum
Dative ..	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Ablative ..	illo	illo	illo	illis	illis	illis

N.B.—*Ille*, like *hic*, is used both substantively and adjectively—e.g., *ille* = *that man* ; *ille puer* = *that boy* ; *illa* = *those things*, or *that* ; *illa opera* = *those works*. *Ille* often means simply *he*, etc.

EXERCISE LXX.

1. Beátus est ille servus qui Dóminum amat. 2. In illo témpore dixit Jesus discípulis suis, Data est mihi omnis potestas in coelo et in terrâ. 3. Ille qui mandúcat meam carnem, et bibit meum sanguínem, in me manet, et ego in illo. 4. In diébus illis descéndit Ángelus Dei de coelo. 5. Quis erat ille puer qui illud dixit? 6. Illos libros his púeris dábitus. 7. Servus illius est bonus, sed servus meus est malus. 8. Cur illud dixísti? 9. Núntius venit ad reginam et dicit illi, Exércitus victus est. 10. Illum amámus, et illi multa dona damus. 11. Illam puéllam laudámus, sed hunc púerum culpámus. 12. Hi servi sunt boni, illi mali. 13. Jesus venit ad discípulos suos et manducávit cum illis. 14. Rex púerum vidit et vocávit eum. 15. Dóminum amo: in illo est auxílium meum. 16. Illud opus non póssumus suscípere. 17. Cujus liber est ille? 18. Sacérdos ad altáre venit et ante illud stat et orat. 19. Quis est pater illórum puerórum? 20. Da illos libros illi puéllae.

SECTION XL.

Present Participles.

Present participles of all four Conjugations are formed by removing the **-bam** of the **Imperfect** tense and adding **-ns**—*e.g.* :

amábam, amans, loving; audiébam, áudiens, hearing, etc.

The present participle is declined like **potens**.

N.B.—The verb *to be* has no present participle.

EXERCISE LXXI.

VOCABULARY.

procidere, to fall down.

óriens, the east, orient.

Judaéi, the Jews.

ubi, where.

natus, born.

antecedere, to go before.

intráre, to enter.

invenire, to find.

magus (2), a wise man.

turbáre, to trouble.

1. Ecce magi ab oriénte venérunt dicétes, Ubi est qui natus est rex Judaeórum? 2. Vídimus stellam ejus in oriénte, et vénimus adoráre eum. 3. Áudiens haec, Heródes rex turbátus est. 4. Mittens illos in Bétlehem, dixit, Inveníte púerum. 5. Ecce stella antecédébat eos. 6. Vidétes stellam magi gaudébant. 7. Intrátes domum invenérunt púerum cum Mariâ, matre ejus, et procidétes adoravérunt eum. 8. Docéte omnes gentes, baptizátes hómines in nómine Patris, et Fílii, et Spíritus Sancti. 9. Omnis qui credit quóniam Jesus est Christus a Deo natus est. 10. In diébus illis ecce ego vidi ángelum ascendéntem ab oriénte, habéntem signum Dei vivi. 11. Ángeli procidétes in conspéctu throni Dei in fácies suas, adoravérunt Dóminum. 12. Apériens os suum docébat pópulum. 13. Omnes clamábant, dicétes, Hosánna filio David.* 14. Videns illum, in fáciem suam prócidit. 15. Ego vox clamántis in desérto. 16. Vidébitis Fílium hóminis veniéntem cum potestáte magnâ. 17. Jesus vidit Mariám, matrem suam, stantem juxta crucem. 18. Homo veniens adorábat illum.

SECTION XLI.

Future Participles.

The **Future Participle** of any verb is regularly formed by inserting **-ur** before the termination **-us** of the **past participle**—*e.g.* :

amátus, amáturus; audítus, audíturus.

* Many proper nouns which are taken straight from the Hebrew are not declined in Latin; hence **filio David** means *to the son of David*.

The Future Participle is an **active** participle, and is usually to be translated by **about to love, going to love, etc.**—*e.g.* :

Puer auditurus erat verba patris.

The boy was about to listen to the words of his father.

EXERCISE LXXII.

VOCABULARY.

revolvere, to roll back.
accedere, to approach.

iterum, again.
stupefactus, amazed.

fugere, to flee.
excelsus, most high.
tres, three (*neuter, tria*).

expectare, to look for, wait for.
super (*with Acc. and Abl.*), upon, over, above.
lapis, lapidis (*m.*), a stone.
autem (*placed after first word in phrase*), but.
unus, one.
prae (*with Abl.*), before, for.
testimónium, testimony, witness.

1. Et iterum venturus est cum glóriâ judicare vivos et mortuos.
2. Viri stabant stupefacti, audientes vocem, neminem autem videntes. 3. Omnes gentes venient dicentes, Glória tibi, Dómine.
4. Et exspecto resurrectionem mortuorum et vitam venturi saeculi. 5. Tres sunt qui testimónium dant in coelo: Pater, Verbum, et Spíritus Sanctus: et hi tres unum sunt. 6. Et tres sunt qui testimónium dant in terrâ: Spíritus, et aqua et sanguis: et hi tres unum sunt. 7. Discípuli venerunt ad Jesum, dicentes, Tu es qui venturus es? 8. Quis ostendit vobis fugere a venturâ irâ? 9. Benedicta es tu, Virgo María, a Dómino Deo excélso, prae omnibus mulieribus super terram. 10. Iterum vidébo vos, et gaudébit cor vestrum. 11. Ángelus Dómini descendit de coelo, et accédens revolvit lapidem, et sedébat super eum.

SECTION XLII.

Third Conjugation Verbs in -io.

Some 3rd Conjugation verbs form their present indicative (1st person singular) in **-io**, and keep the **i** throughout the present, future, and imperfect tenses—*e.g.* :

cápere, to take.

Pres. Indic.: **cápío, capis, capit, cápi-mus, cápítis, cápíunt.**
Future: **cápiam, cápíes, cápíet, etc.**
Imperfect: **cápíebam, cápíebas, etc.**

Some verbs like **cāpere** :

eripio* (*perf. eripui*), to snatch away, deliver.
fācio (*perf. feci*), to do, make.
accipio (*perf. accēpi*), to receive.
fūgio (*perf. fugi*), to flee.
respicio (*perf. respēxi*), to look, regard.
despicio (*perf. despēxi*), to despise, look down on.
aspicio (*perf. aspēxi*), to look, see.
suscipio, (*perf. suscepī*), to receive, undertake.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

VOCABULARY.

sacrifico (1), to sacrifice.
hōstia, a victim, host.
injūria, injury.
condo (3), to lay up.
mundus (2), the world.
scio (4), to know.
igitur, therefore.

calix, cālicis (*m.*), cup, chalice.
revolūtus, rolled back.
monumentum, grave, sepulchre.
salutare, salutāris (*n.*), salvation.
divitiae, riches.
respōdeo (2), to answer.
finis, finis (*m.*), end, border.

1. Adjutōrium nostrum in nōmine Dōmini, qui fecit coelum et terram. 2. Clamābit ad me, et ego exaūdiam eum; erīpiam eum et glorificābo eum. 3. Cālicem salutāris accīpiam, et sacrificābo hōstiam laudis. 4. Ostēde nobis, Dōmine, misericōrdiam tuam, et salutāre tuum da nobis. 5. Et ille respōdens dixit, Amīce, non fācio tibi injūriam. 6. Accīpite et manducāte ex hoc omnes. 7. Et Verbum caro factum est. 8. Quis revōlvet lāpidem ab ōstio monumēti? 9. Et respiciētes vidērunt lāpidem revolūtum. 10. Hic vir, despiciens mundum, condit divitias in coelo. 11. Nunc scio quia misit Dōminus Āngelum suum, et erīpuit me de manu Herōdis. 12. Dēxtera Dōmini fecit virtūtem, dēxtera Dōmini exaltāvit me. 13. Et venit Jesus, et accipit panem, et dat eis. 14. Imponēbant manus super illos, et accipiēbant Spīritum Sanctum. 15. Viri Galilaei, cur statis aspiciētes in coelum? 16. Vidērunt omnes fines terrae salutāre Dei nostri. 17. Iterum relīquo mundum et vado ad Patrem. 18. Venīte, gentes, et adorāte Dōminum: quia hōdie descēdit lux magna super terram. 19. Vidērunt ōculi mei salutāre tuum. 20. Christus est Hōstia divīna.

* The 1st pers. sing. pres. indic. will henceforth be given in the vocabularies instead of the infin., with a figure in brackets to show the conjugation.

SECTION XLIII.

Prohibitions.

Prohibitions are expressed in Latin by **noli** (plural **nolite**) with the Infinitive. **Noli** is the imperative of the verb **nolo**, *to be unwilling*, and the prohibition really means: *be unwilling to do this*: **noli hoc facere**—*i.e., do not do this*.

EXERCISE LXXIV.

VOCABULARY.

fac, imperative of **facio**.
dic, imperative of **dico**.
duc, imperative of **duco**.
incrédulus, faithless.
enim, for.
salvus, safe, whole.

tango (3) (*perf. tēgigi*), to touch.
oblátio, **oblaciónis** (*f.*), oblation.
nondum, not yet.
vexo (1), to trouble, vex.
condémno (1), to condemn.
occído (3), to kill.

1. Dixit eis, Súrgite, et nolíte timére. 2. Levántes autem óculos suos néminem vidérunt nisi solum Jesum. 3. Dixit ei Jesus, Noli me tângere, nondum enim ascénderé ad Patrem meum. 4. Vade autem ad fratres meos, et dic eis, Ascénderé ad Patrem meum et Patrem vestrum. 5. Venit ígitur María Magdaléne annúntians discípulis, Vidi Dóminum, et haec dixit mihi. 6. Pax vobis: ego sum, nolíte timére. 7. Haec fac pro me. 8. Noli vexáre illum. 9. Hanc ígitur oblaciónem áccipe, Dómine. 10. Nolíte judicáre, et non judicabímmini; nolíte condemnáre, et non condemnabímmini. 11. Noli esse incrédulus, sed fidélis. 12. Deus tibi osténdet divítias glóriæ suæ. 13. Dico servo meo, Fac hoc, et facit. 14. Exaltábo te, Dómine, quóniam suscepísti me. 15. Nolíte timére eos qui occídunt corpus, ánimam autem non possunt occídere. 16. Dómine, éripe ánimam meam; salvum me fac propter misericórdiam tuam. 17. Fides tua, filia, salvam te fecit. 18. Jesus dixit illi, Noli flere. 19. Ecce óculi Dómini super timéntes eum, sperántes in misericórdiâ ejus. 20. Jesus salvum faciet pópulum suum a peccátis eórum.

SECTION XLIV.

Deponent Verbs.

There are many verbs in Latin which have a passive form, but an active meaning. These are called **deponent verbs**. With the exception of the present and future participles, they have no

active forms at all. They can never be used with a passive meaning. Thus the verb **sequor** means *I follow* and it is impossible to say "I am being followed" in Latin; the phrase has to be turned round into an active form: "someone is following me." These deponent verbs are found in all four conjugations, both regular and irregular. The following are some of the most common deponents:

precor (1), *perf. precátus sum*, I pray.
laetor (1), *perf. laetátus sum*, I rejoice.
confiteor (2), *perf. conféssus sum*, I confess, I give praise.
misereor (2), *perf. misértus sum*, I have pity on, I have mercy on.
sequor (3), *perf. secútus sum*, I follow.
loquor (3), *perf. locútus sum*, I speak.
mórior (3), *perf. mórtuus sum*, I die.
nascor (3), *perf. natus sum*, I am born.
patior (3), *perf. passus sum*, I suffer.

EXERCISE LXXV.

VOCABULARY.

lingua, a tongue.
propterea, therefore.
ergo, therefore.
psalmus, a psalm.
parábola, a parable.

exsulto (1), to exult, rejoice.
turba, a crowd.
natio, nationis (*f.*), a nation.
várius, various, divers.
plebs, plebis (*f.*), people.

1. Confitébor tibi, Deus meus. 2. Discípuli Jesum sequebántur. 3. Hómines iníqui moriéntur. 4. Haec locútus sum. 5. Laetántur coeli et exsultat terra ante fáciem Dómini, quia venit. 6. Puer natus est nobis, et fílius datus est nobis. 7. Precor beátam Mariám, semper Vírginem, oráre pro me ad Dóminum Deum nostrum. 8. Turba magna sequebátur Jesum in civitátem. 9. Omnis qui vivit, et credit in me, non moriétur in aetérnum. 10. Et accédens Jesus locútus est eis, dicens, Data est mihi omnis potestas in coelo et in terrá. 11. Christus passus est pro nobis. 12. Loquebántur Apóstoli linguis variis. 13. Sub Pónto Piláto passus et sepúltus est. 14. Loquébar de testimoniis tuis in conspéctu regum. 15. Ecce, nos relíquimus ómnia et secúti sumus te: quid ergo erit nobis? 16. Propterea confitébor in nationibus, Dómine, et nómini tuo psalmum dicam. 17. In virtúte tuâ, Dómine, laetábitur justus, et super salutáre tuum exsultábit. 18. Laetábitur justus in Dómino, et sperábit in eo. 19. Confíteor Deo omnipoténti quia peccávi, meâ culpâ, meâ culpâ, meâ máximâ culpâ. 20. Haec ómnia locútus est Jesus in parábolis ad turbas.

Semi-Deponent Verbs.

A very few verbs are semi-deponent—i.e., have a passive form in the perfect tenses:

aúdeo, to dare, has perfect **ausus sum**.
gaúdeo, to rejoice, has perfect **gavisus sum**.
fído, to trust, has perfect **físus sum**.

SECTION XLV.

The Present Infinitive and Imperative Passive.

The Present Infinitive Passive of verbs of the 1st, 2nd, and 4th Conjugations is formed by changing the **-e** at the end of the present Infinitive Active into **i**—e.g. :

Active: **amáre**; Passive: **amári**; so: **monére**, **monéri**; **audíre**, **audíri**.
 Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation drop out the **-er-**, but end in **i**, like the rest.
 Active: **régere**; Passive: **regi**.

The Present Infinitive, therefore, of all Deponent Verbs is formed in this way—e.g. :

precári, to pray; **confitéri**, to confess; **sequi**, to follow; **moiri**, to die; **pati**, to suffer, etc.

The 2nd Person Singular of the Present Imperative Passive is formed in exactly the same way as the Present Infinitive Active—e.g. :

amáre means (1) to love, or (2) be thou loved.
régere means (1) to rule, or (2) be thou ruled.

Hence **séquere** means follow; **lóquere** means speak, etc.

The 2nd Person Plural Imperative Passive is formed in exactly the same way as the Present Indicative Passive: **amámíni** means (1) ye are loved, or (2) be ye loved. Hence **sequímíni** means (1) ye follow, or (2) follow ye.

EXERCISE LXXVI.

VOCABULARY.

exténdo (3), to stretch out.
incípio (3), to begin.
modo, now.
lex, legis (f.), law.
interrogo (1), to ask.

volo, I will (*perf.* **vólui**).
vis, thou wilt, or thou wishest.
leprósus (2), a leper.
póstea, afterwards.
secúndum (*with Acc.*), according to, after.

1. Dixit Jesus Petro: Séquere me.
2. Regína coeli, lactáre.
3. Bonum est confitéri Dómino.
4. Judaéi dixerunt, Nos legem

habémus, et secúndum legem debet mori. 5. Fílius ejus incipiébatur mori. 6. Ecce, leprósus véniens adorábat Jesum, dicens, Dómine, si vis, potes me mundáre. 7. Et exténdens manum Jesus tétigit eum, dicens, Volo, mundáre. 8. Dicit ei Petrus, Dómine, quo vadis? Respóndit Jesus, Quo ego vado, non potes me sequi modo, sequéris autem póstea. 9. Dicit ei Petrus, Quare non possum te sequi modo? ánimam meam pro te ponam. 10. Nunc vado ad eum qui misit me; et nemo intérogat me, Quo vadis?

SECTION XLVI.

The Relative Pronoun.

	QUI, QUAE, QUOD : who.					
	Singular.			Plural.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nominative ..	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
Accusative ..	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
Genitive ..	cujus	cujus	cujus	quorum	quarum	quorum
Dative ..	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ablative ..	quo	quâ	quo	quibus	quibus	quibus

N.B.—The Relative agrees with its antecedent in number, person, and gender, but not in case; it takes its own case from its own phrase—e.g. :

Puer quem vidi adest : *the boy whom I saw is here.*

Puer adest, cujus matrem vidi : *the boy is here whose mother I saw.*

Hic est servus a quo rex occisus est : *this is the slave by whom the king was killed.*

EXERCISE LXXVII.

VOCABULARY.

óffero (3), to offer.
sómnium, a dream.
judícium, judgment.
nix, nivis (*f.*), snow.
sol, solis (*m.*), sun.
nubes, nubis (*f.*), a cloud.
appareo (2), to appear.
seorsum, apart.
compláceo (2), to please.

procédo (3), to proceed, come forth.
peto (3), to ask, seek.
quaero (3), to seek, inquire.
sermo, sermónis (*m.*), word, speech.
ob (*with Acc.*), on account of, through.
vestiméntum, raiment, clothing.
assúmo (*perf. assúmpsi*) (3), to take up.
obúmbro (1), to overshadow.
egi (*perf. of ago*), I have done.

1. Audíte sómnum meum quod vidi. 2. Súscipe, sancta Trínitas, hanc oblatiónem quam tibi offérimus ob memóriam passiónis, resurrectiόnis et ascensiόnis Dómini nostri. 3. Spíritus Sanctus, quem mittet Pater in nómine meo, ille vos docébit ómnia. 4. Exaúdi, Dómine, vocem meam, quâ clamávi ad te. 5. Pétite, et accipiétis; quaérite, et inveniétis; pulsáte, et aperiétur vobis. 6. Ómnis enim qui petit áccipit, et qui quaerit invenit, et pulsánti aperiétur. 7. Qui non díligit me, sermónes meos non servat. 8. Et sermó quem audístis, non est meus, sed ejus qui misit me. 9. Venit hora in quâ omnes qui in monuméntis sunt aúdiunt vocem Fílii Dei. 10. Et procédent, qui bona fecérunt, in resurrectiόnem vitæ: qui autem mala egérunt, in resurrectiόnem júdicii.

11. In illo témpore, assúmpsit Jesus Petrum et Jacóbum et Johánnem, fratrem ejus, et duxit illos in montem excélsu scórsum: et transfigurátus est ante eos. Et resplénduit fácies ejus sicut sol: vestiménta autem ejus facta sunt alba sicut nix. Et ecce apparuérunt illis Moýses et Elías cum eo loquéntes. Respóndens autem Petrus, dixit ad Jesum, Dómine, bonum est nobis hic esse. Si vis, faciémus tria tabernácula, tibi unum, Moýsi unum, et Elíae unum. Et ecce nubes lúcida obumbrávit eos, et ecce, vox de nube dicens, Hic est Fílius meus diléctus, in quo mihi bene complácu: audite eum. Et audiéntes, discípuli prociderunt in fácies suas, et timuérunt. Et accédens, Jesus tétigit eos, dicens, Súrgite, et nolíte timére. Levántes autem óculos suos néminem vidérunt, nisi solum Jesum. Et descendérunt illi de monte.—*St Matthew xvii, 9.*

SECTION XLVII.

The Verb IRE: to go.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	
eo	ibo	ibam	ivi	or ii
is	ibis	ibas	ivisti	iisti
it	ibit	ibat	ivit	iit
imus	ibimus	ibámus	ivimus	fimus
itis	ibitis	ibátis	ivístis	iístis
eunt	ibunt	ibant	ivérunt	iérunt

N.B.—The Present Participle of *ire* is *iens* in the Nominative, but declines: *eúntem, eúntis*, etc.

Compounds of Ire.

éxéo, to go out, go forth.
ábeo, to go away, depart.
íneo, to go in, enter.
intrúeo, to enter.

tránseo, to go across, to pass.
rédeo, to go back, return.
péreo, to perish.
circúeo, to go round.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

VOCABULARY.

coena, supper.
sonus, a sound.
locus, a place.
ibi, there.
úndecim, eleven.
dúbito (1), to doubt.
quidam, certain, some.

praédico (1), to preach, extol.
navis, **navis** (*f.*), a ship.
fretum, water, sea.
áridus, dry, withered.
usque, right on, even, continually.
constítuo (3), to appoint, set.
consummatio, **consummationis** (*f.*), consummation, end.

1. In illo témpore ibat Jesus in civitátem quae vocátur Naim, et ibant cum eo discípuli ejus, et turba magna. 2. Et vox de throno exívit, dicens, Laudáte Deum nostrum. 3. Quid existiis in desértum vidére? 4. María ábiit in civitátem et íniit in domum Zacharía. 5. Et íterum exiens de finibus Tyri, venit ad mare Galilaéae. 6. Et dimísit eos et ábiit in montem oráre. 7. Ascendéntes in navem, abiérunt in desértum locum seórsum. 8. Et introívit íterum in synagógam, et erat ibi homo habens manum áridam. 9. Eúntes in mundum univérsum, praedicáte omnibus géntibus. 10. In omnem terram exívit sonus eórum, et in fines terrae verba eórum. 11. Exiérunt Jesus et discípuli ejus in montem Olivárum. 12. Et exiit hic sermo in univérsam terram illam. 13. Et dimíttens eos, ascéndit íterum in navem, et ábiit trans fretum. 14. Ibo in civitátem, et ibi coenam parábo. 15. Si abíero, et parávero vobis locum, íterum venio et accípiam vos ad me. 16. Eúntes renuntiáte Johánni quae audívistis et vidístis. 17. Dómine, salva nos, perimus. 18. Et circuíbat Jesus totam Galilaéam, docens in synagógis. 19. Et ábiit Ananías, et introívit in domum, et impónens manus super eum, dixit, Saule, frater, Dóminus misit me. 20. Introíbo ad altáre Dei, ad Deum qui laetíficat juventútem meam.

In illo témpore, úndecim discípuli abiérunt in Galilaéam, in montem, ubi constítuerat illis Jesus. Et vidéntes eum, adoravérunt: quidam autem dubitavérunt. Et accédens, Jesus locútus est eis, dicens, Data est mihi omnis potéstas in coelo, et in terrâ. Eúntes ergo, docéte omnes gentes, baptizántes eos in nómine

Patris, et Fílii, et Spíritus Sancti: docéntes eos serváre ómnia quae mandávi vobis. Et ecce, ego vobíscum sum ómnibus diébus, usque ad consummationem saeculi.—*St Matthew xxviii, 16.*

SECTION XLVIII.

The Present Subjunctive.

amáre.	monére.	régere.	audíre.	esse.
amem	móneam	regam	aúdiam	sim
ames	móneas	regas	aúdias	sis
amet	móneat	regat	aúdiat	sit
amémus	moneámus	regámus	audiámus	simus
amétis	moneátis	regátis	audiátis	sitis
ament	móneant	regant	aúdiant	sint

Passive: amer, améris, amétur, amémur, amémini, améntur, etc.

The Present Subjunctive may express the idea *let me love*, or *may I love*—e.g., *orémus*, *let us pray*; *fiat volúntas tua*, (*may*) *Thy will be done*.

EXERCISE LXXIX.

VOCABULARY.

matutínus (*adj.*), morning.

inténdens, attentive.

custódia, watch.

lábium, lip.

fio (3), to be done, be made, become, be.

deprecátio (*f.*), prayer, entreaty.

novi (*perf. of nosco*), I know.*

volúntas, volúntátis (*f.*), will.

1. Ecce áncilla Dómini: fiat mihi secúndum verbum tuum.
2. Fiant aures tuae intendéntes in vocem deprecaciónis meae.
3. A custodiâ matutinâ usque ad noctem speret Ísraël in Dómino.
4. Fidélium ánimae per misericórdiam Dei requiéscent in pace.
5. Suscípiat Dóminus sacrificium de mánibus tuis ad laudem et glóriam nóminis sui.
6. Dóminus sit in corde tuo et in lábiis tuis.
7. Haec est dies quam fecit Dóminus: exsultémus et laetémur in eâ.
8. Adorémus in aetérnum sanctíssimum Sacraméntum.
9. Corpus Dómini nostri Jesus Christi custódiat ánimam tuam in vitam aetérnam.
10. Sperent in te omnes qui novérunt nomen tuum.
11. Pater noster, qui es in coelis, sanctificétur nomen tuum, advéniat regnum tuum, fiat volúntas tua, sicut in coelo et in terrâ.
12. Tenuísti manum dexteram meam, et in volúntate tuâ deduxísti me, et cum glóriâ suscepísti me.

* **nosco** means *I get to know*; therefore the perfect **novi** means *I have got to know*—i.e., *I know*.

SECTION XLIX.

The Pronoun IPSE.

The Pronoun **ipse** declines exactly like **ille**, except that the Neuter singular (Nominative and Accusative) ends in **-m** instead of **-d**: **ipsum**. It is used:

1. As an emphatic pronoun, meaning *self*: hence **ego ipse** means *I myself*; **múlier ipsa**, *the woman herself*; **púeri ipsi**, *the boys themselves*, and so on.

2. As a personal pronoun, meaning *he, she, it*—e.g., **ipsum vidi**, *I saw him*.

EXERCISE LXXX.

VOCABULARY.

possídeo (2), to possess.

si quis, if anyone.

ábnego (1), to deny.

tunc, then.

indígnus, unworthy.

negligéntia, a failing.

digné, worthily.

competénter, fitly.

Evangélíum, gospel.

pes, pedis (m.), foot.

circúmsto (1), to stand round.

nec, and not.

semetípsum, himself.

perdo (3) (*perf. pérdidi*), to lose, destroy.

mitis (3rd Decl. adj.), gentle.

immaculátus, spotless, immaculate.

offénsio, offénsiónis (f.), transgression.

circumstántes, those present.*

defúctus, dead, departed.

proficio (3), to help, assist, profit.

apud (with Acc.), with, at.

ut (followed by Subj.), that, in order that.

unívर्सus, all.

innumerábilis (3rd Decl. adj.), countless.

1. Ecce fáciám illos ut véniant et adórent ante pedes tuos. 2. Oráte, fratres, ut meum et vestrum sacrificíum acceptábile fiat apud Deum Patrem omnipoténtem. 3. Dóminus sit in corde tuo et in lábiis tuis, utigné et competénter annúnties Evangélíum suum, in nómine Patris, et Fílii, et Spíritus Sancti. 4. Tunc Jesus dixit, Pater, grátias ago tibi quóniam audísti me, ego autem sciébam quia semper me audis; sed propter pópulum qui circúmstat dixi, ut credant quia tu me misísti. 5. Súscipe, Sancte Pater, omnipoténs aetérne Deus, hanc immaculátam hóstiam quam ego, indígnus fámulus tuus, óffero tibi Deo meo vivo et vero, pro innumerábilibus peccátis, et offénsiónibus et negligéntiis meis, et pro ómnibus circumstántibus, sed et pro ómnibus fidélibus Christiánis vivis atque defúctis: ut mihi et illis proficiat ad salutem in vitam aetérnam. 6. Nunc dimíttis servum tuum, Dómine, secúndum verbum tuum in pace. 7. Quia vidérunt óculi mei salutáre tuum. 8. Quod parásti ante fáciem

* Literally, *those standing round*—present participle of **circúmsto**.

ómnium populórum. 9. Lumen ad revelatióem géntium et glóriam plebis tuae Israël. 10. Beáti paúperes spírítu: quóniam ipsórum est regnum coelórum. 11. Beáti mites: quóniam ipsi possidébunt terram. 12. Véritas mea et misericórdia mea cum ipso; et in nómine meo exaltábitur cornu ejus. 13. Tunc Jesus dixit discíplis suis, Si quis vult post me veníre, ábneget semet-ípsum, et tollat crucem suam et sequátur me. 14. Qui enim volúerit ánimam suam salvam fácere, perdet eam; qui autem perdiderit ánimam suam propter me, invéniet eam. 15. Non turbétur cor vestrum: créditis in Deum, et in me créдите. 16. Non créditis quia ego in Patre, et Pater in me est? 17. Verba quae ego loquor vobis, a me ipso non loquor, Pater autem in me manens, ipse facit ópera. 18. Gaudeámus et exultémus, et demus glóriam Deo. 19. Sit nomen Dómini benedíctum ex hoc nunc, et usque in saéculum. 20. Pater vobis dabit Spírítum veritátis, quem mundus non potest accíperere, quia non videt eum nec scit eum; vos autem cognoscétis eum, quia apud vos manébit, et in vobis erit.

SECTION L.

The Imperfect Subjunctive.

The **Imperfect Subjunctive** of any verb is formed by adding the endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**, on to the Present Infinitive Active—*e.g.*, Infinitive, **amare**; Imperfect Subjunctive, **amárem, amáres, amáret, amarémus, amarétis, amarent**. So **audírem, audíres**, etc. The Passive is formed in the same way, by adding the endings **-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -mini, -ntur**—*e.g.*, **amárer, amaréris**, etc.

EXERCISE LXXXI.

VOCABULARY.

comprehéndo (3), to comprehend.
sine (*with Abl.*), without.
nihil, nothing.
recípio (3), to receive.
quotquot, as many as.
neque, nor, and not (*same as nec*).

ténebrae (*plural*), darkness.
perhíbeo (2), bear, render.
próprius, his own, belonging to.
lúceo (2), to shine.
fieri (*infin. of fio*), to be made, become.
ex (*with Abl.*), from, of, out of.

In **príncipio** erat Verbum, et Verbum erat apud Deum, et Deus erat Verbum. Hoc erat in **príncipio** apud Deum. Ómnia per ipsum facta sunt, et sine ipso factum est nihil quod factum est. In ipso vita erat, et vita erat lux hóminum; et lux in ténebris lucet, et ténebrae eam non comprehendérunt. Fuit homo

missus a Deo, cui nomen erat Johánnes. Hic venit in testimoniúm, ut testimoniúm perhiberet de lúmine, ut omnes crederent per illum. Non erat ille lux; sed ut testimoniúm perhiberet de lúmine. Erat lux vera, quae illúminat omnem hóminem veniéntem in hunc mundum. In mundo erat, et mundus per ipsum factus est, et mundus eum non cognóvit. In própria venit, et sui eum non recepérunt. Quotquot autem recepérunt eum, dedit eis potestátem filios Dei fferi; his qui credunt in nómine ejus, qui non ex sanguínibus, neque ex voluntáte carnis, neque ex voluntáte viri, sed ex Deo nati sunt. Et Verbum caro factum est, et habitávit in nobis; et vídimus glóriam ejus, glóriam quasi Unigéniti a Patre, plenum grátiae et veritátis.*—*St John i, 1.*

EXERCISE LXXXII.

VOCABULARY.

tento (1), to tempt.
diábolus, the devil.
jejúno (1), to fast.
quadraginta, forty.
státuo (3), to set, place.
deórsum, down.
ait, he says.
rursum, again.
ne (*with Subj.*), lest.

esúrio (4), to be hungry.
forte, haply, by chance.
tentátor, tempter.
iste (*like ille*), that or this.
valdē, very, exceedingly.
cado (3), to fall, fall down.
sérvio (4) (*with Dative*), to serve.
ministro (1), to minister.
solí (*Dative of solus*), alone, only.

In illo témpore ductus est Jesus in desértum a Spíritu, ut tentarétur a diábolo. Et jejunábat quadraginta diébus et quadraginta nóctibus, et póstea esúriit. Et accédens tentátor dixit ei, Si Fílius Dei es, dic ut lápidés isti panes fiant. Qui respóndens dixit, Scriptum est: Non in solo pane vivit homo, sed in omni verbo quod procédit de ore Dei. Tunc assúmpsit eum diabolus in sanctam civitátem, et státuit eum super pinnáculum templi, et dixit ei, Si Fílius Dei es, mitte te deórsum. Scriptum est enim: Quia Ángelis suis mandávit de te, et in mánibus tollent te, ne forte offéndas ad lápidem pedem tuum. Ait illi Jesus, Rursum scriptum est: Non tentábis Dóminum Deum tuum. Íterum assúmpsit eum diabolus in montem excélsum valdē: et osténdit ei ómnia regna mundi, et glóriam eórum, et dixit ei, Haec ómnia tibi dabo, si cadens adoráveris me. Tunc dicit ei Jesus, Vade Sátana: scriptum est enim: Dóminum Deum tuum adorábis, et illi soli sérvies. Tunc reliquit eum diabolus: et ecce ángeli accessérunt, et ministrábant ei.—*St Matthew iv, 1.*

* **plenus** is sometimes followed by the Genitive case as well as by the Ablative; cf. English *full of* and *filled with*.

SECTION LI.

The Ablative Absolute.

The **Ablative Absolute** is a phrase consisting of a noun and a participle in the Ablative case, representing a subordinate clause in English. The translation of the phrase varies with the context, being temporal, causal, concessive, etc., as the occasion requires —e.g.:

nobis audiéntibus, rex haec dixit, *the king said this in our hearing, or while we were listening*; **rege mórtuo, pópulus lugébat**, *the people mourned because the king was dead*.

The Ablative Absolute is used very frequently in Latin owing to the want of a past participle active (except in deponent verbs). It is impossible, for example, to say in Latin, "having done this, he went away," because there is no word that means "having done." The phrase must, therefore, be turned passively, "this having been done," with both words in the Ablative: **hoc facto, ábiit**. The translation, however, should take the active form: *having done this, he went away*.

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

VOCABULARY.

quinque, five.

ligo (1), to bind.

piscis, piscis (*m.*), fish.

in médio, in the midst.

claudo (3), to shut.

clausus (*past part.*), shut.

somnus, sleep.

somni (*pl.*), dreams.

apértus, opened.

duóbus (*Dat. or Abl. of duo*), two.

frango (3) (*perf. fregi*), to break.

infúndo (3), to pour in, infuse.

quáesumus, we beseech thee.

intúeor (2), to behold, see, gaze at.

recúmbo (3), to recline (at table).

mens, mentis (*f.*), mind, soul.

sto (*perf. steti*) (1), to stand.

divído (*perf. divisi*) (3), to divide.

1. Relíctis illis, in desértum ábiit. 2. Venit Jesus, jánuis clausis, et stetit in médio, et dixit, Pax vobis. 3. Sedénte Jesu super montem Olivéti, accessérunt ad eum discípuli. 4. Et ille, elevátis óculis in discípulos suos, dicébat, Beátí paúpéres, quia vestrum est regnum Dei. 5. Defúnto Heróde, ecce Ángelus Dómini appáruit in somnis Joseph in Aegýpto. 6. Et accéptis quinque páribus et duóbus piscibus, íntuens in coelum, benedíxit, et fregit panes, et dedit discípulis suis, ut pónerent ante eos; et duos pisces divisit ómnibus. 7. Grátiam tuam quáesumus, Dómine, méntibus nostris infúnde, ut qui, ángelo nuntiánte, Christi

Filii tui Incarnatiónem cognóvimus, per Passiόnem Ejus et crucem ad Resurrectiόnis glóriam perducámur. 8. Misereátur vestri* omnípotens Deus, et, dimíssis peccátis vestris, perdúcat vos ad vitam aetérnam. 9. In illo témpore, recumbéntibus úndecim discípulis, appáruit illis Jesus. 10. Et Jesu baptizáto, et oránte, apértum est coelum.

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

VOCABULARY.

mane, in the morning, early.

ungo (3), to anoint.

jam, now, already.

invicem, one another.

stola, a robe.

cándidus, white.

quippe, for, in fact.

expavésco (3), to be affrighted.

una sabbatórum, the first day of the week.

emo (3) (*perf. emi*), to buy.

aróma, arómatis (*n.*), sweet spice.

óríor (4) (*perf. ortus sum*), to rise.

júvenis, júvenis (*m.*), a young man.

coopértus, clothed.

obstupésco (2) (*perf. obstúpui*), to be amazed.

praeecédo (3), to go before.

In illo témpore María Magdaléne, et María mater Jacóbi, et Salóme emérunt arómata, ut veniéntes úngerent Jesum. Et valdē mane unâ sabbatórum, véniunt ad monuméntum, orto jam sole. Et dicébant ad invicem, Quis revólvet nobis lápidem ab óstio monuménti? Et respiciéntes vidérunt revolútum lápidem. Erat quippe magnus valdē. Et introeúntes in monuméntum, vidérunt júvenem sedéntem in dextris, coopértum stolâ cándidâ, et obstupéarunt. Qui dicit illis, Nolíte expavésce: Jesum quaéritis Nazarénum, crucífixum: surréxit, non est hic; ecce locus ubi posuérent eum. Sed ite, dícite discípulis ejus et Petro, quia praeecédit vos in Galilaéam: ibi eum vidébitis, sicut dixit vobis.—*St Mark xvi, 1.*

SECTION LII.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive Active is formed by adding **-ssem** to the 1st person singular of the Perfect Indicative Active—*e.g.* :

amávi, amavíssem; mónui, monuíssem; rexi, rexíssem, etc.

The tense is conjugated regularly—*e.g.* :

amavíssem, amavísset, amavísset, amavíssemus, amavíssetis, amavísset.†

* **miséreo** governs the Genitive case, or sometimes the Dative.

† **-vi-** often drops out—*e.g.*, **amavíssem** contracts to **amássem**; **audivíssem** to **audíssem**; **transivíssem** to **transíssem**, etc.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive is formed from the past participle of the verb, and the Imperfect Subjunctive of *esse*—*e.g.* :

amátus essem, mónitus essem, etc.

N.B.—*cum*, meaning *when*, is usually followed by the pluperfect subjunctive in reference to past time—*e.g.* :

Cum haec dixisset, abiit, when he had said this, he went away.

EXERCISE LXXXV.

VOCABULARY.

occúrrō (3), to meet, go to meet

(*with Dative*).

caecus, blind.

inde, thence, from there, then.

recédo (3), to withdraw, depart.

regio, regiónis (*f.*), region, land.

daemónium, an evil spirit.

centúrio, centuriónis (*m.*), a centurion.

appropinquo (1), to come nigh, approach.

et . . . et, both . . . and.

1. Cum descendisset Jesus de monte, secútae sunt eum turbae multae. 2. Cum autem Jesus introisset Capharnaum, accessit ad eum centúrio. 3. Cum Magi audissent regem, abiérunt. 4. Et cum recessissent, ecce Ángelus Dei apparuit. 5. Cum appropinquasset Jesus ad Jerúsalem, et venisset ad montem Olivéti, tunc misit duos discipulos ad civitatem. 6. Videns Jesus turbas, ascendit in montem, et cum sedisset, accesserunt ad eum discipuli. 7. Cum inde transisset, venit in synagógam. 8. Cum venisset trans fretum in regiónem illam, occurrerunt ei duo habéntes daemónia. 9. Cum jejúnasset quadraginta diébus et quadraginta nóctibus, póstea esúriit. 10. Cum autem venisset ad illum locum, accesserunt ad eum et caeci et infirmi.

SECTION LII (*Continued*).

N.B.—The Pluperfect Subjunctive is used to express an unfulfilled condition in past time—*e.g.* :

Si hoc fecisses, peccavisses, if you had done this, you would have sinned (implying, but you did not do it).

The Imperfect Subjunctive is used to express an unfulfilled condition in present time—*e.g.* :

Si tu adesses, haec tibi dicerem, if you were here, I would tell you this (implying, but you are not here).

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

VOCABULARY.

Pharisaéus, a pharisee.**nescio** (4), to know not.**fur, furis** (n.), a thief.**alius**, other.**ullus**, any.**adhuc**, still.**odérunt**, they hate.**scitôte**, know ye.**perfodio** (3), to break open.**crucifigo** (3), to crucify.**útique**, surely, certainly.**trado** (3), to deliver up, betray.**adversum** (*with Acc.*), against.**pláceo** (2), to please (*with Dative*).**sino** (3), to allow, suffer.**qualis**, what manner of.**paterfamilias**, the good man of the house.**quâ horâ**, at what hour.

1. Dómine, si fuisses hic, non esset mórtuus frater meus.
 2. Si adhuc homínibus placérem, Christi servus non essem.
 3. Pharisaéus autem dixit, Hic si esset prophéta, sciret útique quæ et qualis est mûlier quæ tangit eum. 4. Audístis quia ego dixi vobis: vado, et venio ad vos. Si diligerétis me, gauderétis útique, quia vado ad Patrem. 5. Vigiláte, quia nescítis quâ horâ Dóminus vester venturus sit. Illud autem scitôte, quóniam, si sciret paterfamilias, quâ horâ fur ventúrus esset, vigiláret útique, et non síneret perfodi domum suam. 6. Judaéi dixerunt, Si non esset hic malefáctor, non tibi tradidissémus eum. 7. Si ópera non fecissem in eis, quæ nemo álius fecit, peccátum non habérent, nunc autem et vidérunt et odérunt et me et Patrem meum. 8. Dicit ergo Pilátus, Mihi non lóqueris? Nescis quia potestátam habeo crucifigere te, et potestátam dimíttre te? Respóndit Jesus, Non habéres potestátam adversum me ullam, nisi tibi datum esset desuper.

SECTION LIII.

The Perfect Subjunctive.

The Perfect Subjunctive Active is formed by adding **-erim, -eris, -erit, -erimus, -eritis, -erint**, to the perfect stem of the verb—*e.g.* :

amáverim, monúerim, réxerim, audíverim, etc.

The Perfect Subjunctive Passive is formed from the past participle of the verb, and the present subjunctive of **esse**—*e.g.* :

amátus sim, mónitus sim, etc.

N.B.—The Subjunctive is often, though not always in Church Latin, used in an indirect question clause—*e.g.* :

I shall ask him what he has done = **eum rogábo quid fécerit.**

I asked him what he had done = **eum rogávi quid fecisset.**

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

VOCABULARY.

coepérunt, they began.
vello (3), to pluck.
sábbato, on the sabbath.
quando, when.
quómo, how.
violo (1), to break.

sata (*neut. pl.*), corn, cornfields.
spica, an ear of corn.
licet, it is lawful.
panes propositionis, loaves of proposition.
cómo (3), to eat.
crimen, criminis (*n.*), blame, guilt.

In illo témpore ábiit Jesus per sata sábbato: discípuli autem ejus esuriéntes coepérunt véllere spicas, et manducáre. Phari-saéi autem vidéntes, dixerunt ei, Ecce discípuli tui fáciunt quod non licet fácere sábbatis. At ille dixit eis, Non legístis quid fécerit David, quando esúriit, et qui cum eo erant: Quómo intrávit in domum Dei, et panes propositionis comédit, quos non licébat ei édere, neque his, qui cum eo erant, nisi solis sacer-dótibus? Aut non legístis in lege quia sábbatis sacerdótes in templo sábbatum víolant, et sine crimine sunt?—*St Matthew xii, 1.*

SECTION LIII (*Continued*).

N.B.—The Perfect Subjunctive is sometimes used, with **ne** or some other negative, to express a Prohibition—*e.g.* :

Ne timúeris, *be not afraid.*

The Present Subjunctive is also used in this way in Church Latin—*e.g.* :

Ne occídas, *do not kill.*

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

VOCABULARY.

conféstim, forthwith.
súscito (1), to raise up.
ejicio (3), to cast out.
pótius, rather.
infirmus, sick, infirm.
curo (1), to heal, care for.

praecipio (3), to enjoin, command.
pacífico (1), to make peaceful, grant peace to.
lepra, leprosy.
munus, múnis (*n.*), gift, present.
coadúno (1), to unite, grant union to.
dignor (1), to vouchsafe.

1. Cum autem descendisset de monte, secútae sunt eum turbæ multae; et ecce leprósus véniens, adorábat eum, dicens, Dómine, si vis, potes me mundáre. Et exténdens Jesus manum, tétigit eum, dicens: Volo. Mundáre. Et conféstim mundáta est lepra ejus. Et ait illi Jesus: Vide, némini díxeris: sed vade, osténde te sacerdoti, et offer munus, quod praecépit Moýses, in

testimónium illis. 2. Apóstolos misit Jesus, praecepiens eis, dicens, In viam gentium ne abiéritis, et in civitates Samaritanorum ne intravéritis, sed potius ite ad oves quae perierunt domus Israël. 3. Dómine Jesu Christi, qui dixísti Apóstolis tuis, Pacem relinquo vobis, pacem meam do vobis: ne respicias peccata mea, sed fidem Ecclesiae tuae: eamque* secúndum voluntatem tuam pacificáre et coadunáre dignéris: Qui vivis et regnas Deus per ómnia saecula saeculorum.—*St Matthew viii, 1.*

SECTION LIV.

The Infinitive Mood.

The Present Infinitives, Active and Passive, have already been given. The Perfect Infinitive Active is formed by adding **-sse** to the Perfect Indicative, 1st person singular—*e.g.* :

amávi, *I have loved* ; **amavísse**, *to have loved* ; so, **rexi**, **rexísse**, etc.

The Perfect Infinitive Passive is formed from the Past Participle of the verb, and **esse** :

amátus esse, *to have been loved* ; so, **rectus esse**, etc.

The Future Infinitive Active is formed from the Future Participle and **esse**—*e.g.* :

amatúrus esse, *to be about to love* ; so, **rectúrus esse**, etc.

The Future Infinitive Passive is formed from the Supine† and **iri**‡—*e.g.* :

amátum iri, *to be about to be loved* ; so, **rectum iri**, etc.

N.B.—The Perfect Passive and Future Active Infinitives are declinable, being composed of participles; the other four are indeclinable.

In Ecclesiastical Latin an Indirect Statement clause is usually expressed by some word such as **quóniam** or **quia**, which represents the English “that,” and which is followed by the Indicative (or sometimes by the Subjunctive)—*e.g.* :

Confíteor quia peccávi, *I confess that I have sinned.*

* **que** meaning *and* is attached to the end of a word, but is translated as though it preceded it—*e.g.*, **virí mulierésque**, *men and women*.

† The Supine is a verbal noun (indeclinable) formed similarly to the past participle, but ending in **-um**. It is seldom used in Latin (see Section LX).

‡ **iri** is the present Infinitive passive of the verb **eo**, *to go*, used impersonally.

The alternative construction, which is the only one allowed in Classical Latin, is sometimes used—viz., no word is used for “that,” the subject of the clause is put in the Accusative, and the verb in the Infinitive—*e.g.* :

“*They say that he is walking in the fields*” (*they say him to be walking, etc.*), *dicunt eum in agris ambulare.*

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

VOCABULARY.

phantásma, a phantasm.

unde, whence.

propterea, therefore.

puto (1), to think.

supra (with *Acc.*), above.

extra (with *Acc.*), outside, beyond.

óbviam vénio (with *Dat.*), to come to meet.

cito, quickly.

traho (3) (*perf. traxi*), to draw, drag.

aéstimo (1), to think.

visio, visiónis (*f.*), a vision.

prius, before.

1. Illi vidéntes eum ambulántem supra mare, putavérunt phantásma esse. 2. Bonum est nos hic esse. 3. Novi virtútem de me exiísse. 4. Et respondébant se nescíre unde esset. 5. Propterea óbviam venit ei turba, quia audiérunt eum fecísse hoc signum. 6. Dícitis in Beélzebub ejícere me daemónia. 7. Traxérunt Paulum extra civitátem, aestimántes eum mórtuum esse. 8. Muléres fuérunt ad monuméntum ante lucem, et non invénto córpore ejus venérunt dicéntes se etiam visiónem angelórum vidísse, qui dicunt eum vívere. 9. Spero autem in Dómino Jesu, me cito Timótheum mittere ad vos. 10. Símeon respónsum accéperat a Spíritu Sancto se non visúrum mortem nisi prius vidéret Christum Dóminum.

EXERCISE XC.

VOCABULARY

revélo (1), to reveal.

aut, or.

præváléo (2), to prevail.

solvo (3), to loose.

solutus, *past part. of solvo.*

at, but.

alii . . . alii, some . . . others.

petra, a rock.

portae inferi, the gates of hell.

clavis, clavis (*f.*), a key.

quodcúmque, whatsoever.

pars, partis (*f.*), part, quarter.

In illo témpore venit Jesus in partes Caesaræae Philíppi, et interrogábat discípulos suos, dicens, Quem dicunt hómines esse Fílium hóminis? At illi dixérunt, Álii Johánnem Baptístam, álii autem Eliám, álii vero Jeremíam, aut unum ex Prophétis. Dicit illis Jesus, Vos autem quem me esse dícitis? Respóndens Simon Petrus, dixit, Tu es Christus, Fílius Dei vivi. Respóndens autem Jesus, dixit ei, Beátus es, Simon Bar Jona: quia caro et sanguis non revelávit tibi, sed Pater meus, qui in coelis est. Et

ego dico tibi, quia tu es Petrus, et super hanc petram aedificábo Ecclésiám meam, et portae ínferi non praevalébunt advérsus eam. Et tibi dabo claves regni coelórum. Et quodcúmque ligáveris super terram, erit ligátum et in coelis: et quodcúmque sólveris super terram, erit solútum et in coelis.—*St Matthew xvi, 13.*

SECTION LV.

Questions.

Questions are often written in Ecclesiastical Latin with nothing except the note of interrogation to show that the sentence has an interrogative form*—*e.g.* :

Pilátus vocávit Jesum et dixit ei : Tu es rex Judaeórum ? Pilate called Jesus, and said to him, Art thou the king of the Jews ?

If the answer "yes" is expected, the question is introduced by the particle **nonne**—*e.g.* :

Nonne hoc verum est ? *surely this is true ?*

If the answer "no" is expected, the question is introduced by **num** or **numquid**—*e.g.* :

Numquid hoc verum est ? *surely this is not true ?*

EXERCISE XCI.

VOCABULARY.

ardens, burning.

dum, while.

ambo, both.

fóvea, a ditch.

virtútes, miracles.

Scriptúra, Scripture.

faber, fabri (*m.*), a carpenter.

custos, custódis (*m.*), a keeper.

interficio (3), to kill.

vultis, you wish, you are willing.

prophéto (1), to prophesy.

cado (3), to fall.

1. Nonne hic est faber, filius Maríae, frater Jacóbi et Joseph et Judae et Simónis ? 2. Nonne et soróres ejus hic nobíscum sunt ? 3. Respondérunt ergo Judaéi, et dixerunt ei, Nonne bene dícimus nos, quia Samaritánus es tu, et daemónium habes ? 4. Nonne cor nostrum ardens erat in nobis dum loquerétur in viâ, et aperíret nobis Scriptúras ? 5. Num custos fratris mei ego sum ? 6. Respondit Pilátus, Numquid ego Judaéus sum ? 7. Numquid potest caecus caecum dúcere ? Nonne ambo in fóveam cadunt ? 8. Numquid et vos vultis discípuli ejus fieri ? 9. Nonne hic est quem quaerunt interficere ? 10. Multi dicent mihi in illâ die, Dómine, Dómine, nonne in nómine tuo prophetávimus, et in nómine tuo daemónia ejécimus, et in nómine tuo virtútes multas fécimus ?

* In Classical Latin the particle **-ne** is attached to the first word in the sentence—*e.g.*, **audivístine ?** *did you hear ?*

EXERCISE XCII.

VOCABULARY.

verē, indeed, truly.
castellum, a town.
itaque, so, therefore.
addūco (3), to bring.
sedūco (3), to seduce.
sic, so, thus.
nocte, by night.
unusquisque, each.
aliquis, anyone, someone.

semen, séminis (*n.*), seed.
dissensio, dissensionis (*f.*), dissension.
apprehēdo (3), to take, lay hold of.
pōtifex, pontificis (*m.*), chief priest.
princeps, principis (*m.*), a ruler.
maledictus, accursed.
scrutor (1), to search.
revérto (3) (*perf. revērsus sum*), to go back.
pergo (3) (*perf. perrēxi*), to go, proceed.

Ex illā turbā, cum audissent hos sermōnes ejus, dicēbant, Hic est verē prophēta. Alii dicēbant, Hic est Christus. Quidam autem dicēbant, Numquid a Galilaēā venit Christus? Nonne Scriptūra dicit, Quia ex sēmine David, et de Bēthlehem castēllo, ubi erat David, venit Christus? Dissensio itaque facta est in turbā propter eum. Quidam autem ex ipsis volēbant apprehēdere eum; sed nemo misit super eum manus. Venērunt ergo minīstri ad pontīfices et pharisaēos. Et dixerunt eis illi, Quare non adduxistis illum? Respondērunt minīstri, Nunquam sic locutus est homo, sicut hic homo? Respondērunt ergo eis pharisaēi, Numquid et vos sedūcti estis? Numquid ex principibus aliquis crēdidit in eum, aut ex pharisaēis? Sed turba haec, quae non novit legem, maledicti sunt. Dixit Nicodēmus ad eos, ille qui venit ad eum nocte, qui unus erat ex ipsis, Numquid lex nostra júdicat hómīnem, nisi prius audierit ab ipso, et cognóverit quid fáciat? Respondērunt, et dixerunt ei, Numquid et tu Galilaéus es? Scrutāre Scriptúras, et vide quia a Galilaēā prophēta non surgit. Et revērsi sunt unusquisque in domum suam. Jesus autem perrēxit ad montem Olivēti.—*St John vii, 40.*

SECTION LVI.

Time.

In Classical Latin the Accusative Case is used (without a preposition) to express "time how long"—*e.g.*:

Manebāmus tres horas, *we remained three hours*;

and the Ablative Case to express "time when" and "time within which"—*e.g.*:

Profectus est tertiā horā, *he set out at the third hour*; **redibo tribus diēbus**, *I shall return within three days.*

In Ecclesiastical Latin the above rules may be observed; but the Ablative Case is often used where Classical Latin would require the Accusative, and prepositions are frequently employed.

EXERCISE XCIII.

VOCABULARY.

tértius, third.
quintus, fifth.
cómmodo (1), to lend.
quid ? why ?
sex, six.

vigília, a watch.
regrédior (*perf.* *regréssus sum*), to return.
otíósus, idle.
excíto (1), to raise up.
tantus, so great, so much.

1. Et resurrexit tertiâ die secúndum Scriptúras, et ascendit in coelum. 2. Quintâ autem vigiliâ noctis venit ad eos, ámbulans supra mare. 3. Jesus autem plenus Spíritu Sancto regréssus est a Jordáne, et agebátur a Spíritu in desértum diébus quadraginta, et tentabátur a diabolo. 4. Quis vestrum habébit amicum, et ibit ad illum médiâ nocte, et dicet illi, Ámice, cómmoda mihi tres panes ? 5. Et mansit ibi duos dies. 6. Quid hic statis totâ die otíosi ? 7. Et erat tribus diébus non videns. 8. Erit Fílius hóminis in corde terrae tribus diébus et tribus nóctibus. 9. Quadraginta et sex annis aedificátum est templum, et tu tribus diébus excitábis illud ? Dicit Philippo Jesus, Tanto témpore vobíscum sum, et non cognovístis me ?

SECTION LVII.

The Gerund.

The **Gerund** is a verbal noun answering to the English verbal in **-ing**. It may be formed by removing the **-bam** of the Imperfect Indicative, and adding **-ndum**—*e.g.* : **amábam, amándum**. The Gerund is declined like **regnum**, but has no plural. In Ecclesiastical Latin the Gerund may be followed by a direct object—*e.g.* :

Habes potestátem ejiciéndi daemónia, *you have the power of casting out evil spirits.*

The Accusative of the Gerund, with the preposition **ad**, is used to express Purpose—*e.g.* :

Misit discípulos ad prædicándum, *he sent the disciples to preach.*

EXERCISE XCIV.

VOCABULARY.

stupor, **stupóris** (*m.*), astonishment.**factum est**, it came to pass.**lectus**, a bed, couch.**tectum**, a roof.**cógito** (1), to think.**an**, or.**jáceo** (2), to lie.**tulit**, he took up (*perf. of fero*).**gáudium**, joy.**sano** (1), to heal.**inférre**, to bring in.**tégula**, a tile.**summittó** (3), to let down.**remittó** (3), to forgive.**cogitátio**, **cogitatiónis** (*f.*), a thought.**coram** (*with Abl.*), before, in the presence of.

1. Et dedit illis potestátem curándi infirmitátes, et ejiciéndi daemónia. 2. Conféstim ergo misi ad te: et tu bene fecísti veniéndi. 3. Qui habet aures audiéndi, áudiat. 4. Deus autem spei répleat vos omni gáudio et pace in credéndo. 5. Et factum est in unâ diérum, et ipse sedébat docens. Et erant Pharisaéi sedéntes, et legis doctóres, qui vénerant ex omni castélló Galilaéae, et Judaéae, et Jerúsalem: et virtus Dómini erat ad sanándum eos. Et ecce viri portántes in lecto hóminem, qui erat paralýticus: et quaerébant eum inférre, et pónere ante eum. Et non inveníentes quâ parte illum inférrent prae turbâ, ascendérunt supra tectum, et per tégulas summiserunt eum cum lecto in médium ante Jesum. Quorum fidem ut vidit, dixit: Homo, remittúntur tibi peccáta tua. Et coepérunt cogitáre Scribae, et Pharisaéi, dicéntes, Quis est hic qui lóquitur blasphemias? Quis potest dimíttre peccáta, nisi solus Deus? Ut cognóvit autem Jesus cogitatiónes eórum, respóndens, dixit ad illos, Quid cogitátis in córdibus vestris? Quid est facílius dícere, Dimittúntur tibi peccáta: an dícere, Surge, et ámbula? Ut autem sciátis quia Fílius hóminis habet potestátem in terrâ dimitténdi peccáta, (ait paralýtico) Tibi dico, surge, tolle lectum, et vade in domum tuam. Et conféstim consúrgens coram illis tulit lectum, in quo jacébat: et ábiit in domum suam, magníficans Deum. Et stupor apprehéndit omnes, et magnificábant Deum. Et repléti sunt timóre, dicéntes, Quia vídimus mirabília hódie.—*St Luke* v, 17.

SECTION LVIII.

The Gerundive.

The Gerundive is a verbal adjective. It is formed in the same way as the Gerund, but declines like an ordinary adjective: **amándus**, **amánda**, **amándum**, etc. Only transitive verbs have Gerundives.

The Gerundive is used in the same way as the Gerund, but agrees with the noun that accompanies it in number, gender, and case, the noun being put into the case required by the construction of the sentence—*e.g.*:

Misit discipulos ad infirmos sanandos, he sent disciples to heal the sick.

EXERCISE XCV.

VOCABULARY.

visito (1), to visit.

jusjurandum, an oath.

testamentum, a testament.

praeeo, to go before.

sciéntia, knowledge.

erigo (3), (*perf. erexi*), to lift up.

memoror (1), to remember, be mindful.

juro (1), to swear.

dirigo (3), (*perf. direxi*), to direct.

viscera, bowels, heart.

Et Zacharias replétus est Spíritu Sancto: et prophetávit, dicens, Benedíctus Dóminus Deus Ísraél, quia visitávit, et fecit redemptiónem plebis suae. Et eréxit cornu salutis nobis: in domo David púeri sui. Sicut locútus est per os sanctórum, qui a saéculo sunt, prophetárum ejus: Salútem ex inimícis nostris, et de manu ómnium, qui odérunt nos. Ad faciéndam misericórdiam cum pátribus nostris: et memorári testaménti sui sancti. Jusjurándum, quod jurávit ad Ábraham patrem nostrum, datúrum se nobis: Ut sine timóre, de manu inimicórum nostrórum liberáti, serviámus illi. In sanctitáte, et justítiâ coram ipso, ómnibus diébus nostris. Et tu, puer, prophéta Altíssimi vocáberis: praefbis enim ante faciém Dómini paráre vias ejus: Ad dandam sciéntiam salutis plebi ejus: in remissionem peccatórum eórum; per viscera misericórdiae Dei nostri: in quibus visitávit nos, óriens ex alto: Illumináre his, qui in ténebris, et in umbrâ mortis sedent: ad dirigéndos pedes nostros in viam pacis.—*St Luke i, 67.*

SECTION LIX.

The Gerund and Gerundive (*Continued*).

The Gerund and Gerundive are used with the verb *to be* to express obligation; the Gerundive is used of transitive verbs, the Gerund of intransitive; in the latter case the subject is put in the Dative—*e.g.*:

Hic liber legéndus est, this book must be read (Gerundive).

Tibi regrediéndum est, you must return (Gerund).

EXERCISE XCVI.

VOCABULARY.

videor (*pass. of video*), to seem.**furor** (1), to steal.**tamen**, nevertheless, yet.**iníitium**, beginning.**convérsor** (1), to dwell.**charus** (*adj.*), dear.**quisquis**, whoever.**resisto** (3), to resist (*with Dative*).**praecipue**, especially.**tentátio, tentatiónis** (*f.*), temptation.**circa** (*with Acc.*), about, at.**diléctio, dilectiónis** (*f.*), love.

1. Conversántibus illis in Galilaéâ, dixit illis Jesus, Fílius hóminis tradéndus est in manus hóminum, et occídent eum, et tértiâ die resúrget. 2. Qui ergo álium doces, te ipsum non doces: qui praédicas non furándum, furáris. 3. Resisténdo passiónibus, invenítur pax vera cordis, non autem eis serviéndo. 4. Vigilándum est tamen, praecipue circa iníitium tentatiónis. 5. Vigiláte et oráte, ut non intrétis in tentatiónem. 6. In me debet amici diléctio stare, et propter me diligéndus est, quisquis tibi bonus visus est, et multum charus in hac vitâ. 7. Nemo est bonus, nisi solus Deus, qui est super ómnia laudándus et in ómnibus benedicéndus. 8. Vigilándum est et orándum, ne tempus otiosē tránseat.

SECTION LX.

The Supine.

The **Supine** is an indeclinable verbal noun, seldom used in Latin constructions, but important as forming one of the principal parts of a Latin verb. The Supine ends in **-um**, and from it the past participle passive is directly formed—*e.g.*, the supine of **amo** is **amátum**, the past participle **amátus**. The four principal parts of the verb are: the 1st person singular of the present indicative (**amo**), the present infinitive (**amáre**), the 1st person singular of the perfect indicative (**amávi**), and the supine (**amátum**). If these four parts of the verb are known, all the tenses of an irregular verb can then be formed.*

The Supine is occasionally used to express purpose (in Classical Latin only after a verb of motion)—*e.g.*:

Misit hómines respónsum datum, he sent men to give an answer.

* For the principal parts of irregular verbs see page 106.

EXERCISE XCVII.

VOCABULARY.

gládus (2), a sword.	séparo (1), to separate, set at variance.
nurus (4), a daughter-in-law.	domésticus (<i>adj.</i>), belonging to a household.
socrus (4), a mother-in-law.	frígidus (<i>adj.</i>), cold.
tantum (<i>adv.</i>), only.	dignus , worthy (<i>followed by Abl.</i>).
merces , mercédis (<i>f.</i>), reward.	potum (<i>supine of poto</i>), to drink.

Nolíte arbitrári quia pacem vénerim mittere in terram: non veni pacem mittere, sed gládium. Veni enim separáre hóminem advérsus patrem suum, et filiam advérsus matrem suam, et nurum advérsus socrum suam. Et inimíci hóminis, doméstici ejus. Qui amat patrem aut matrem plus quam me, non est me dignus: et qui amat filium aut filiam super me, non est me dignus. Et qui non accípit crucem suam et séquitur me, non est me dignus. Qui ínvenit ánimam suam, perdet illam: et qui perdiderit ánimam suam propter me, invéniet eam. Qui récipit vos, me récipit: et qui me récipit, récipit eum qui me misit. Qui récipit prophétam in nómine prophétæ, mercédem prophétæ accípiet: et qui récipit justum in nómine justí, mercédem justí accípiet. Et quicúnque potum déderit uni ex mínimis istis cálicem aquæ frígidaæ tantum in nómine discípli: amen dico vobis, non perdet mercédem suam. —*St Matthew x, 34.*

EXERCISE XCVIII.

VOCABULARY.

festus , festive.	consuetúdo , consuetúdinis (<i>f.</i>), a custom.
existímo (1), to think.	consummo (1), to fulfil, consummate.
comitátus (4), company.	iter , itineris (<i>n.</i>), journey.
requíro (3), to seek.	noti (<i>pl.</i>), acquaintances.
cognátus , a kinsman.	trídium , three days.
admíror (1), to wonder.	opórtet (<i>impersonal</i>), it behoves.
dóleo (2), to sorrow, grieve.	súbditus , subject.
stúpeo (2), to be astonished.	aetas , aetátis (<i>f.</i>), age.

Cum factus esset Jesus annórum duódecim, ascendéntibus illis Jerúsalem secúndum consuetúdinem diéi festi, consummátisque diébus, cum redírent, remánsit puer Jesus in Jerúsalem, et non cognóverunt paréntes ejus. Existimántes autem illum esse in comitátu, venérunt iter diéi, et requirébant eum inter cognátos et notos. Et non inveníentes, regréssi sunt in Jerúsalem, requiréntes eum. Et factum est, post trídium invenérunt illum in templo, sedéntem in médio doctórum, audiéntem illos et interrogántem eos. Stupébant autem omnes, qui eum audiébant,

super prudentiâ et responsis ejus. Et videntes admirati sunt. Et dixit Mater ejus ad illum, Fili, quid fecisti nobis sic? Ecce, pater tuus et ego dolentes quaerebamus te. Et ait ad illos, Quid est, quod me quaerebatis? Nesciebatis, quia in his, quae Patris mei sunt, oportet me esse? Et ipsi non intellexerunt verbum, quod locutus est ad eos. Et descendit cum eis, et venit Nazareth: et erat subditus illis. Et Mater ejus conservabat omnia verba haec in corde suo. Et Jesus proficiebat sapientiâ, et aetate, et gratiâ apud Deum et homines.—*St Luke ii, 42.*

EXERCISE XCIX.

VOCABULARY.

primus (*adj.*), first.
secundus (*adj.*), second.
scabellum, a footstool.
donec, until.

mandatum, a commandment.
similis (*3rd Decl. adj.*), like.
congrego (1), to gather together.
quisquam, anyone.

Accesserunt ad Jesum Pharisaei: et interrogavit eum unus ex eis legis doctor, tentans eum: Magister, quod est mandatum magnum in lege? Ait illi Jesus, Diliges Dominum Deum tuum ex toto corde tuo, et in totâ animâ tuâ, et in totâ mente tuâ. Hoc est maximum et primum mandatum. Secundum autem simile est huic: Diliges proximum tuum sicut teipsum. In his duobus mandatis universa lex pendet, et prophetae. Congregatis autem Pharisaeis, interrogavit eos Jesus, dicens, Quid vobis videtur de Christo? cujus filius est? Dicunt ei, David. Ait illis, Quomodo ergo David in spiritu vocat eum Dominum, dicens, Dixit Dominus Domino meo, Sede a dextris meis, donec ponam inimicos tuos scabellum pedum tuorum? Si ergo David vocat eum Dominum, quomodo filius ejus est? Et nemo poterat ei respondere verbum: neque ausus fuit quisquam ex illâ die eum amplius interrogare.—*St Matthew xxii, 35.*

EXERCISE C.

VOCABULARY.

sero (*adv.*), late.
metus (4), fear.
retineo (2), to retain.
clavus (2), a nail.
octo, eight.
deinde, then.

fores, forum (*plur.*) (*f.*), doors.
insufflo (1), to breathe upon.
fixura, a print.
digitus (2), a finger.
intus (*adv.*), within.
affero, to bring nigh.

Cum sero esset die illo, unâ sabbatorum, et fores essent clausae, ubi erant discipuli congregati, propter metum Judaeorum, venit

Jesus, et stetit in médio, et dixit eis, Pax vobis. Et cum hoc dixisset, ostendit eis manus et latus. Gavisi sunt ergo discipuli, viso Dómino. Dixit ergo eis iterum, Pax vobis. Sicut misit me Pater, et ego mitto vos. Haec cum dixisset, insufflavit, et dixit eis, Accípite Spíritum Sanctum: quorum remisérítis peccáta, remittúntur eis; et quorum retinuérítis, reténta sunt. Thomas autem unus ex duódecim, qui dícitur Dídymus, non erat cum eis, quando venit Jesus. Dixérunt ergo ei álíi discípuli, Vídimus Dóminum. Ille autem dixit eis, Nisi vídero in mánibus ejus fixúram clavórum, et mittam dígitum meum in locum clavórum, et mittam manum meam in latus ejus, non credam. Et post dies octo, iterum erant discípuli ejus intus, et Thomas cum eis. Venit Jesus, jánuis clausis, et stetit in médio, et dixit, Pax vobis. Deínde dicit Thomae, Infer dígitum tuum huc, et vide manus meas, et affer manum tuam, et mitte in latus meum: et noli esse incrédulus, sed fidélis. Respóndit Thomas, et dixit ei, Dóminus meus, et Deus meus. Dixit ei Jesus, Quia vidísti me, Thoma, credidísti: beati, qui non víderunt, et credidérunt.—*St John xxi, 19.*

SUMMARY OF ACCIDENCE DECLENSIONS. I.—NOUNS.

	FIRST.	SECOND.			THIRD.		
	<i>rōsa, rose</i> (fem.).	<i>dōminus, lord</i> (mas.).	<i>magister, master</i> (mas.).	<i>regnum, kingdom</i> (neut.).	<i>rex, king</i> (mas.).	<i>mons, mountain</i> (mas.).	<i>hostis, enemy</i> (mas.).
Singular.	Nom.	<i>rōsa</i>	<i>dōminus</i>	<i>magister</i>	<i>regnum</i>	<i>rex</i>	<i>mons</i>
	Voc.	<i>rosa</i>	<i>domine</i>	<i>magister</i>	<i>regnum</i>	<i>rex</i>	<i>mons</i>
	Acc.	<i>rosam</i>	<i>dominum</i>	<i>magistrum</i>	<i>regnum</i>	<i>regem</i>	<i>montem</i>
	Gen.	<i>rosae</i>	<i>domini</i>	<i>magistri</i>	<i>regni</i>	<i>regis</i>	<i>montis</i>
	Dat.	<i>rosae</i>	<i>dominō</i>	<i>magistrō</i>	<i>regnō</i>	<i>regi</i>	<i>monti</i>
	Abl.	<i>rōsa</i>	<i>dominō</i>	<i>magistrō</i>	<i>regnō</i>	<i>rege</i>	<i>monte</i>
Plural.	Nom.	<i>rosae</i>	<i>domini</i>	<i>magistri</i>	<i>regnā</i>	<i>regēs</i>	<i>montēs</i>
	Voc.	<i>rosae</i>	<i>domini</i>	<i>magistri</i>	<i>regna</i>	<i>regēs</i>	<i>montēs</i>
	Acc.	<i>rosās</i>	<i>dominōs</i>	<i>magistrōs</i>	<i>regna</i>	<i>regēs</i>	<i>montēs</i>
	Gen.	<i>rosārum</i>	<i>dominōrum</i>	<i>magistrōrum</i>	<i>regnōrum</i>	<i>regum</i>	<i>montium*</i>
	Dat.	<i>rosis</i>	<i>dominīs</i>	<i>magistris</i>	<i>regnis</i>	<i>regibus</i>	<i>montibus</i>
	Abl.	<i>rosis</i>	<i>dominīs</i>	<i>magistris</i>	<i>regibus</i>	<i>montibus</i>	<i>hostibus</i>

	THIRD (continued).			FOURTH.		FIFTH.
	opus, work (neut.).	nōmen, name (neut.).	grādus, step (mas.).	gēnu, knee (neut.).	dies, day (mas. and fem.).	
Singular.	Nom.	opus	nōmen	grādus	gēnu	dies
	Voc.	opus	nōmen	grādus	gēnu	dies
	Acc.	opus	nōmen	gradum	gēnu	dies
	Gen.	operis	nōminis	grādus	genūs	dies
	Dat.	operi	nōmini	gradui	genū	dies
	Abl.	opere	nōmine	gradu	genū	dies
Plural.	Nom.	operā	nōminā	grādus	genua	dies
	Voc.	opera	nōmina	grādus	genua	dies
	Acc.	opera	nōmina	grādus	genua	dies
	Gen.	operum	nōminum	graduum	genuum	dierum
	Dat.	operibus	nōminibus	gradibus	genibus	dieribus
	Abl.	operibus	nōminibus	gradibus	genibus	dieribus

* Two classes of 3rd declension nouns have -ium in the Gen. Plur.—viz.:

- (1) Parasyllables—i.e., those whose stem does not increase in the gen. sing., as *hostis*, *nubes*, *nubis*, etc.
- (2) Those with monosyllabic stems ending in two consonants—*e-g*, *mons*, stem *mont-*; *nox*, stem *noct-*, etc.

II.—ADJECTIVES.

2nd Declension.

	bōnus, good.					
	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	bōnus	bonā	bonum	bonī	bonae	bonā
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

	Pulcher, fair.					
	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	pulcher	pulchrā	pulchrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrā
Voc.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Acc.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Gen.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dat.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Abl.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

	miser, wretched.					
	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	miser	miserā	miserum	miserī	miserāe	miserā
Voc.	miser	miserā	miserum	miserī	miserāe	miserā
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	miserā
Gen.	miserī	miserāe	miserī	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserō	miserāe	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

3rd Declension.

	Tristis, sad.				dives, rich. *	
	Singular.		Plural.		Singular.	Plural.
	Masc., Fem.	Neuter.	Masc., Fem.	Neuter.	Masc., Fem.	Masc., Fem.
Nom.	tristis	tristē	tristēs	tristia	dives	divitēs
Voc.	tristis	triste	tristēs	tristia	dives	divitēs
Acc.	tristem	triste	tristēs	tristia	divitem	divitēs
Gen.	tristis		tristium		divitis	divitum
Dat.	tristi		tristibus		diviti	divitibus
Abl.	tristi		tristibus		divite	divitibus

* dives is not found in the neuter.

	tristior, sadder.				felix, happy.			
	Singular.		Plural.		Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc., Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	tristior	tristius	tristiorēs	tristiorā	fēlix	fēlix	fēlicēs	fēliciā
Voc.	tristior	tristius	tristiorēs	tristiorā	felix	felix	felicēs	felicia
Acc.	tristior	tristius	tristiorēs	tristiorā	felicem	felix	felicēs	felicia
Gen.	tristioris		tristorum		felicis		felicium	
Dat.	tristori		tristoribus		felicī		felicibus	
Abl.	tristiore		tristoribus		felicī		felicibus	

	prūdēns, prudent.			
	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc., Fem.	Neuter.	Masc., Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	prūdēns	prūdēns	prūdētēs	prūdentiā
Voc.	prudens	prudens	prudentēs	prudentia
Acc.	prudentem	prudens	prudentēs	prudentia
Gen.		prudentis		prudentium
Dat.		prudenti		prudentibus
Abl.		prudenti		prudentibus

	ūnus, one.			duo, two.			trēs, three.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	duō	duae	duō	trēs	triā
Voc.	une	una	unum	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Acc.	unum	unam	unum	duos, duo	duas	duo	trēs	tria
Gen.	unius	unius	unius	duorum	duarum	duorum		trium
Dat.	uni	uni	uni	duobus	duabus	duobus		tribus
Abl.	unō	unā	unō	duobus	duabus	duobus		tribus

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are compared in three degrees:

- | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| (1) Positive: | dūrus , <i>hard</i> . | tristis , <i>sad</i> . |
| (2) Comparative: | durior , <i>harder</i> . | tristior , <i>sadder</i> . |
| (3) Superlative: | durissimus , <i>hardest</i> . | tristissimus , <i>saddest</i> . |

The Comparative is formed from the Positive by adding the suffix **-ior** to the last consonant of the Stem; the Superlative generally by adding **-issimus** to the last consonant of the Stem.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
durus	dur-ior	dur-issimus
tristis	trist-ior	trist-issimus
audax	audac-ior	audac-issimus

Adjectives ending in **-er** form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the Nominative Singular Masculine.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
pulcher , <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrior	pulcherrimus
miser , <i>wretched</i>	miserior	miserrimus
acer , <i>keen</i>	acrior	acerrimus
celer , <i>swift</i>	celerior	celerrimus

Six adjectives ending in **-ilis** form the Superlative by doubling the last consonant of the Stem and adding **-imus** :

facilis , <i>easy</i> .	similis , <i>like</i> .	gracilis , <i>slender</i> .
difficilis , <i>difficult</i> .	dissimilis , <i>unlike</i> .	humilis , <i>lowly</i> .
<i>E.g.</i> : facilis	facilior	facillimus
difficilis	difficilior	difficillimus , <i>etc.</i>

Irregular Comparison.

Some Comparatives and Superlatives are formed from Stems distinct from that of the Positive:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bonus , <i>good</i> .	melior	optimus
malus , <i>bad</i> .	pēior	pessimus
parvus , <i>small</i> .	minor	minimus
multus , <i>much</i> .	plūs	plurimus
magnus , <i>great</i> .	māior	maximus
senex , <i>old</i> .	{ natu major }	natu maximus
	{ senior }	
juvenis , <i>young</i> .	{ natu minor }	natu minimus
	{ junior }	
dives , <i>rich</i> .	{ ditior }	ditissimus
	{ divitior }	divitissimus
vetus , <i>old</i> .	vetustior	veterrimus

N.B.—**Senior** means *old* rather than *young*, and **junior** *young* rather than *old*. **Plus** is only found in the Neuter Singular.

Adjectives compounded with **-dīcus**, **-fīcus**, **-vōlus** (from **dīco**, **facio**, **volo**), form the Comparative and Superlative as if from participles in **-ens**.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
maledīcus , <i>evil-speaking.</i>	maledicentior	maledicentissimus
benefīcus , <i>beneficent.</i>	beneficentior	beneficentissimus
benevōlus , <i>well-wishing.</i>	benevolentior	benevolentissimus

Also **providus**, *provident*, **providentior**, **providentissimus**.

Adjectives in **-eus**, **-ius**, **-uus** are generally compared by using the adverbs **magis**, *more*, **maxime**, *most*, with the Positive: **dubius**, *doubtful*, **magis dubius**, *more doubtful*, **maxime dubius**, *most doubtful*. **Pius**, *pious*, has superlative **piissimus**.

Some Comparatives and Superlatives have no Positive, but correspond to Adverbs from the same Stem.

Adverb.	Comparative Adjective.	Superlative Adjective.
extrā , <i>outside.</i>	extērior	extrēmus , extimus
intrā , <i>within.</i>	intērior	intimus
suprā , <i>above.</i>	supērior	suprēmus , summus
infrā , <i>below.</i>	infērior	infimus , imus
citrā , <i>on this side.</i>	citērior	citimus
ultrā , <i>beyond.</i>	ultērior	ultimus
prae , <i>before.</i>	prior	primus , <i>first.</i>
post , <i>after.</i>	postērior	postrēmus , <i>last.</i>
prōpē , <i>near.</i>	propior	proximus

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs derived from adjectives and ending in **-ē**, **-ō**, **-ter**, form Comparative in **-ius**, Superlative in **-issimē**.

Adjective.	Adverb.	Comparative.	Superlative.
dignus , <i>worthy.</i>	dignē	dignius	dignissimē
tūtus , <i>safe.</i>	tūtō	tutius	tutissimē
fortis , <i>brave.</i>	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
prudens , <i>prudent.</i>	prudenter	prudētius	prudētissimē

Irregular Comparison has corresponding forms in Adverbs.

Adverb.	Comparative.	Superlative.
benē , <i>well.</i>	melius	optimē
malē , <i>ill.</i>	pējus	pessimē
paullum , <i>little.</i>	minus	minimē
multum , <i>much.</i>	plūs	plūrium
magnōpēre , <i>greatly.</i>	magis	maximē
diū , <i>long.</i>	diutius	diutissimē
intus , <i>within.</i>	intērius	intimē

N.B.—**Magis** means *more* in degree; **plus**, *more* in quantity.

III.—PRONOUNS.

	1st Person I	2nd Person You	3rd Person Himself	This Masc. Fem.	Neut.	Masc. Fem.	Who Fem.	Who? Neut.
Singular.	Nom. ego	tū	[ipse]	hic	hōc	qui	quae	quis? masc. nom.
	Acc. mē	tē	sē	hunc	hōc	quem	quam	quid? neut. nom.
	Gen. mēi	tui	sui	hujus	hujus	cujus	cuius	neut. nom. and acc.
	Dat. mihi	tibi	sibi	huic	huic	cui	cui	other cases like qui
Plural.	Nom. nōs	vōs	[ipsi]	hic	hōc	qui	quae	
	Acc. nōs	vōs	sē	hōs	hōs	quos	quas	
	Gen. nostrum (-trī)	vestrum (-trī)	sui	hōrum	hōrum	quorum	quarum	
	Dat. nobis	vōbis	hīs	hīs	hīs	quibus (or quīs) (all genders)	quibus (or quīs) (all genders)	
	Nom. nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi	hīs	hīs	quibus (or quīs) (all genders)	quibus (or quīs) (all genders)	

	3rd Person He She It	The Same Masc. Fem.	Neut.	That Masc. Fem.	Neut.
Singular.	Nom. is	idem	idem	illē	illud
	Acc. eum	eundem	idem	illam	illud
	Gen. ejus	ejusdem	ejusdem	illius	illius
	Dat. ei	eidem	eidem	illi	illi
Plur.	Nom. eī	eīdem	eīdem	illā	illō
	Acc. eos	eōdem	eōdem	illae	illā
	Gen. eorū	eorūdem	eorūdem	illae	illā
	Dat. eis	eisdem	eisdem	illis	illis

The following have Genitive singular, all genders, in -ius, Dative in -i. Alter (alterius), one of two; uter (utrius), which of two; neuter (neutrius), neither; unus, one; ullus, any; nullus, none; solus, only; totus, whole; alius, other. The neuter sing. of alius is aliud.

NUMERALS.

ARABIC NUMERALS.	ROMAN NUMERALS.	CARDINALS, answering the question Quot? how many?	ORDINALS, answering the question Quotus? which in order of number?	DISTRIBUTIVES, answering the question Quoteni? how many each?	NUMERAL ADVERBS, answering the question Quoties? how many times?
1	I	ūnus	m. -ūs, f. -ā, n. -um.	m. -ī, f. -ae, n. -ā.	semel, once
2	II	duo	primus (prior), first	singuli, one each	bis, twice
3	III	trēs	secundus (alter), second	binī, two each	ter, three times, etc.
4	IIII or IV	quattuor	tertius, third, etc.	terni, or trini, three each, etc.	quater
5	V	quinque	quartus	quaterni	quinques
6	VI	sex	quintus	quinī	sexies
7	VII	septem	sextus	senī	septies
8	VIII or IIX	octo	septimus	septēni	octies
9	VIII or IX	nōvem	octāvus	octōni	novies
10	X	dēcem	nōnus	novēni	decies
11	XI	undēcim	decimus	dēni	undecies
12	XII	duodecim	undecimus	undēni	duodecies
13	XIII	tredecim	duodecimus	duodēni	tredecies
14	XIIII or XIV	quattuordecim	tertius decimus	terni dēni	quattuordecies
15	XV	quindecim	quartus decimus	quaterni dēni	quindecies
16	XVI	sēdecim	quintus decimus	quinī dēni	sēdecies
17	XVII	septemdecim	sextus decimus	senī dēni	septiesdecies
18	XVIII or XIII	{ duodēviginti } { octodecim }	septimus decimus	septēni dēni	duodēvices
19	XVIII or XIX	{ undēviginti } { novendecim }	duodēvicesimus	duodēvīceni	undēvices

NUMERALS—Continued.

ARABIC NUMERALS.	ROMAN NUMERALS.	CARDINALS, answering the question Quot? <i>how many?</i>	ORDINALS, answering the question Quotus? <i>which in order</i> <i>of number?</i>	DISTRINCTIVES answering the question Quoteni? <i>how many each?</i>	NUMERAL ADVERBS, answering the ques- tion Quotiens? <i>how many times?</i>
20	XX	viginti	vicesimus	vicēni	vices
21	XXI	unus et viginti	unus et vicesimus	vicēni singuli	semel et vices
22	XXII	duo et viginti	alter et vicesimus	vicēni bini	bis et vices
30	XXX	triginta	trigesimus	tricēni	trices
40	XXXX or XL	quadrāgintā	quadragesimus	quādrāgēni	quādrages
50	L	quingūgintā	quingagesimus	quinquāgēni	quinquages
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexagesimus	sexāgēni	sexages
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuagesimus	septuāgēni	septuages
80	LXXX or XXC	octōgintā	octogesimus	octōgēni	octoges
90	LXXXX or XC	nōngintā	nōnagesimus	nōngēni	nōnages
100	C	centum	centesimus	centēni	centies
101	CI	centum et unus	centesimus primus	centēni singuli	centies semel
200	CC	ducenti, ae, a	ducentesimus	ducēni	ducenties
300	CCC	trecenti, ae, a	trecentesimus	trecentēni	trecenties
400	CCCC	quadringenti	quadragesimus	quādringēni	quādringenties
500	Id or D	quingenti	quingentesimus	quingēni	quingenties
600	Ioc	sescenti	sescentesimus	sescēni	sescenties
700	Iccc	sepingenti	sepingentesimus	sepingēni	sepingenties
800	Icccc	octingenti	octingentesimus	octingēni	octingenties
900	Iccccc	nongenti	nongentesimus	nongēni	nongenties
1,000	cId or M	millē	millesimus	singula milia	milles
2,000	cIocId or MM	duo milia	bis-millesimus	bina milia	bis milies

REGULAR VERBS. ACTIVE. INDICATIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE SIMPLE.	PERFECT AND AORIST.	PLUPERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
First Conjugation. Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	<i>I love, am loving, do love.</i> Amō amā-s amā-t amā-mūs amā-tis amā-nt	<i>I was loving.</i> amā-bam amā-bās amā-bāt amā-bāmūs amā-bātis amā-bānt	<i>I shall love.</i> amā-bō amā-bis amā-bit amā-bimūs amā-bitis amā-būnt	<i>I have loved. I loved.</i> amāv-i amāv-isti amāv-it amāv-imūs amāv-istis amāv-erūt or -erē	<i>I had loved.</i> amāv-eram amāv-erās amāv-erāt amāv-erāmūs amāv-erātis amāv-erānt	<i>I shall have loved.</i> amāv-erō amāv-eris amāv-erit amāv-erimūs amāv-eritis amāv-erint
Second Conjugation. Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	<i>I advise, am advising, do advise.</i> Mōnē-o mōnē-s mōnē-t mōnē-mūs mōnē-tis mōnē-nt	<i>I was advising.</i> mōnē-bam mōnē-bās mōnē-bāt mōnē-bāmūs mōnē-bātis mōnē-bānt	<i>I shall advise.</i> mōnē-bō mōnē-bis mōnē-bit mōnē-bimūs mōnē-bitis mōnē-būnt	<i>I have advised. I advised.</i> mōnū-i mōnū-isti mōnū-it mōnū-imūs mōnū-istis mōnū-erūt or -erē	<i>I had advised.</i> mōnū-eram mōnū-erās mōnū-erāt mōnū-erāmūs mōnū-erātis mōnū-erānt	<i>I shall have advised.</i> mōnū-erō mōnū-eris mōnū-erit mōnū-erimūs mōnū-eritis mōnū-erint
Third Conjugation. Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	<i>I rule, am ruling, do rule.</i> Rēg-o rēg-is rēg-it rēg-imūs rēg-itis rēg-ūt	<i>I was ruling.</i> rēg-ēbam rēg-ēbās rēg-ēbāt rēg-ēbāmūs rēg-ēbātis rēg-ēbānt	<i>I shall rule.</i> rēg-am rēg-es rēg-it rēg-emūs rēg-itis rēg-ēt	<i>I have ruled. I ruled.</i> rēx-i rēx-isti rēx-it rēx-imūs rēx-istis rēx-erūt or -erē	<i>I had ruled.</i> rēx-eram rēx-erās rēx-erāt rēx-erāmūs rēx-erātis rēx-erānt	<i>I shall have ruled.</i> rēx-erō rēx-eris rēx-erit rēx-erimūs rēx-eritis rēx-erint
Fourth Conjugation. Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	<i>I hear, am hearing, do hear.</i> Audī-ō audī-s audī-t audī-mūs audī-tis audī-unt	<i>I was hearing.</i> audī-ēbam audī-ēbās audī-ēbāt audī-ēbāmūs audī-ēbātis audī-ēbānt	<i>I shall hear.</i> audī-am audī-es audī-et audī-emūs audī-itis audī-ēt	<i>I have heard. I heard.</i> audiv-i audiv-isti audiv-it audiv-imūs audiv-istis audiv-erūt or -erē	<i>I had heard.</i> audiv-eram audiv-erās audiv-erāt audiv-erāmūs audiv-erātis audiv-erānt	<i>I shall have heard.</i> audiv-erō audiv-eris audiv-erit audiv-erimūs audiv-eritis audiv-erint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
First Conjugation. Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	Amem Amēs Amēt Amemus Amētis Amēnt	Amārem Amārēs Amārēt Amārēmus Amārētis Amārēnt	Amāverim Amāveris Amāverit Amāverimus Amāveritis Amāverint	Amāvíssem Amāvísseis Amāvísset Amāvíssemus Amāvíssetis Amāvísissent
Second Conjugation. Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	mōneam mōneās mōneāt mōneamus mōneātis mōneānt	mōnerem mōnerēs mōnerēt mōnerēmus mōnerētis mōnerēnt	mōnērīm mōnērīs mōnērīt mōnērīmus mōnērītis mōnērīnt	mōnūíssem mōnūísseis mōnūísset mōnūíssemus mōnūíssetis mōnūísissent
Third Conjugation. Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	rēgam rēgās rēgāt rēgamus rēgātis rēgānt	rēgērem rēgērēs rēgērēt rēgērēmus rēgērētis rēgērēnt	rexērīm rexērīs rexērīt rexērīmus rexērītis rexērīnt	rexīíssem rexīísseis rexīísset rexīíssemus rexīíssetis rexīísissent
Fourth Conjugation. Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	audiam audias audiat audiamus audiatīs audiant	audīrem audīrēs audīrēt audīrēmus audīrētis audīrēnt	audīverīm audīverīs audīverīt audīverīmus audīverītis audīverīnt	audīvíssem audīvísseis audīvísset audīvíssemus audīvíssetis audīvísissent

ACTIVE.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.				
	<i>First Conjugation.</i>	<i>Second Conjugation.</i>	<i>Third Conjugation.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjugation.</i>
	<i>Sing. āmā, love Plur. āmāte</i>	<i>mōnē, advise mōnēte</i>	<i>rēgē, rule rēgite</i>	<i>audī, hear audite</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.				
Present	<i>to love āmāre</i>	<i>to advise mōnēre</i>	<i>to rule rēgēre</i>	<i>to hear audire</i>
Perfect	<i>to have loved āmāvisse</i>	<i>to have advised mōnūisse</i>	<i>to have ruled rexisse</i>	<i>to have heard audivisse</i>
Future	<i>to be about to love āmātūrus esse</i>	<i>to be about to advise mōnītūrus esse</i>	<i>to be about to rule rectūrus esse</i>	<i>to be about to hear auditūrus esse</i>

PARTICIPLES.				
Present	<i>loving āmans</i>	<i>advising mōnens</i>	<i>ruling rēgens</i>	<i>hearing audiens</i>
Future	<i>about to love āmātūrus</i>	<i>about to advise mōnītūrus</i>	<i>about to rule rectūrus</i>	<i>about to hear auditūrus</i>

GERUND.				
	<i>loving āmandum</i>	<i>advising mōnendum</i>	<i>ruling rēgendum</i>	<i>hearing audiendum</i>

SUPINE.				
	<i>to love āmātum</i>	<i>to advise monitum</i>	<i>to rule rectum</i>	<i>to hear auditum</i>

THE VERB **SUM**: I AM.**INDICATIVE.**

	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imper- fect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Plu- perfect.</i>	<i>Future- Perfect.</i>
	<i>I am</i>	<i>I was</i>	<i>I shall be</i>	<i>I have been</i>	<i>I had been</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>
Sing. 1	sum	eram	ero	fui	fueraam	fuero
2	es	eras	eris	fuisti	fueras	fueris
3	est	erat	erit	fuit	fuerat	fuerit
Plur. 1	sumus	erāmus	erimus	fuimus	fuērāmus	fuērimus
2	estis	erātis	eritis	fuistis	fuērātis	fuēritis
3	sunt	erant	erunt	fuerunt	fuerant	fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
Sing. 1	sim	essem	fuerim	fuissem
2	sis	essēs	fueris	fuissēs
3	sit	esset	fuerit	fuisse
Plur. 1	simus	essēmus	fuerimus	fuissēmus
2	sitis	essētis	fueritis	fuissētis
3	sint	essent	fuerint	fuissent

IMPERATIVE.

es .. be thou
este .. be ye

INFINITIVE.

Present .. esse .. to be
Perfect .. fuisse .. to have been
Future .. futūrus esse .. to be about to be

PARTICIPLE.

Future .. futūrus .. about to be

PASSIVE. INDICATIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
	<i>I am loved, or being loved.</i>	<i>I was being loved.</i>	<i>I shall be loved.</i>	<i>I have been loved, or I was loved.</i>	<i>I had been loved.</i>	<i>I shall have been loved.</i>
Sing. 1. 2. 3.	amōr amāris amātur	amābar amābāris amābātur	amābor amāberis amābitur	amātus sum amātus es amātus est	amātus eram amātus erās amātus erat	amātus ero amātus eris amātus erit
Plur. 1. 2. 3.	amāmur amāmini amantur	amābāmur amābāmini amabāntur	amābimur amābimini amābuntur	amāti sumus amāti estis amāti sunt	amāti erāmus amāti erātis amāti erant	amāti erimus amāti eritis amāti erunt
	<i>I am advised, or being advised.</i>	<i>I was being advised.</i>	<i>I shall be advised.</i>	<i>I have been, I was, advised.</i>	<i>I had been advised.</i>	<i>I shall have been advised.</i>
Sing. 1. 2. 3.	monēor monēris monētur	monēbar monēbāris monēbātur	monēbor monēberis monēbitur	monitus sum monitus es monitus est	monitus eram monitus erās monitus erat	monitus ero monitus eris monitus erit
Plur. 1. 2. 3.	monēmur monēmini monentur	monēbāmur monēbāmini monēbantur	monēbimur monēbimini monēbuntur	moniti sumus moniti estis moniti sunt	moniti erāmus moniti erātis moniti erant	moniti erimus moniti eritis moniti erunt
	<i>I am ruled, or being ruled.</i>	<i>I was being ruled.</i>	<i>I shall be ruled.</i>	<i>I have been, I was, ruled.</i>	<i>I had been ruled.</i>	<i>I shall have been ruled.</i>
Sing. 1. 2. 3.	regor regoris regitur	regēbar regēbāris regēbātur	regar regaris regitur	rectus sum rectus es rectus est	rectus eram rectus erās rectus erat	rectus ero rectus eris rectus erit
Plur. 1. 2. 3.	regimur regimini reguntur	regēbāmur regēbāmini regēbantur	regemur regimini regentur	recti sumus recti estis recti sunt	recti erāmus recti erātis recti erant	recti erimus recti eritis recti erunt
	<i>I am heard, or being heard.</i>	<i>I was being heard.</i>	<i>I shall be heard.</i>	<i>I have been, I was, heard.</i>	<i>I had been heard.</i>	<i>I shall have been heard.</i>
Sing. 1. 2. 3.	audior audiris auditur	audiebar audiebāris audiebātur	audiar audieris audietur	auditus sum auditus es auditus est	auditus eram auditus erās auditus erat	auditus ero auditus eris auditus erit
Plur. 1. 2. 3.	audimur audimini audiuntur	audiebāmur audiebāmini audiebantur	audiemur audiemini audientur	auditi sumus auditi estis auditi sunt	auditi erāmus auditi erātis auditi erant	auditi erimus auditi eritis auditi erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
Sing. 1. 2. 3.	amē amēris amētūr	amāret amāretis amārētūr	amātus amatus amati	amātus amatus amati
Plur. 1. 2. 3.	amēmini amēmini amēntur	amārent amārentis amārēntur	amatus amatus amati	amātus amatus amati
Sing. 1. 2. 3.	monēar monēaris monēātūr	monēret monēretis monērētūr	monitus monitus moniti	monitus monitus moniti
Plur. 1. 2. 3.	monēamini monēamini monēantur	monērēnt monērēntis monērēntur	monitus monitus moniti	monitus monitus moniti
Sing. 1. 2. 3.	regar regāris regātūr	regēret regēretis regērētūr	rectus rectus recti	rectus rectus recti
Plur. 1. 2. 3.	regāmini regāmini regantur	regērēnt regērēntis regērēntur	rectus rectus recti	rectus rectus recti
Sing. 1. 2. 3.	audiar audiaris audiatūr	audiret audiretis audirētūr	auditus auditus auditi	auditus auditus auditi
Plur. 1. 2. 3.	audiamini audiamini audiantur	audirēnt audirēntis audirēntur	auditus auditus auditi	auditus auditus auditi

PASSIVE.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.				
	<i>First Conjugation.</i>	<i>Second Conjugation.</i>	<i>Third Conjugation.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjugation.</i>
Singular	āmāre	mōnēre	rēgēre	audīre
Plural	āmāmini	mōnēmini	rēgimini	audimini

INFINITIVE MOOD.				
Present	<i>to be loved</i> āmārī	<i>to be advised</i> mōnērī	<i>to be ruled</i> rēgi	<i>to be heard</i> audīrī
Perfect	<i>to have been loved</i> āmātus esse	<i>to have been advised</i> mōnītus esse	<i>to have been ruled</i> rectus esse	<i>to have been heard</i> audītus esse
Future	<i>to be about to be loved</i> āmātum irī	<i>to be about to be advised</i> mōnītum irī	<i>to be about to be ruled</i> rectum irī	<i>to be about to be heard</i> audītum irī

PARTICIPLE.				
Perfect	<i>having been loved</i> āmātus	<i>having been advised</i> mōnītus	<i>having been ruled</i> rectus	<i>having been heard</i> audītus

GERUNDIVE.				
	<i>meet to be loved</i> amandus	<i>meet to be advised</i> monendus	<i>meet to be ruled</i> regendus	<i>meet to be heard</i> audiendus

IRREGULAR VERBS.

	Possum.	Eo.	Fero.		Volo.	Nolo.	Malo.	Fio.
Indicative.	<i>I am able.</i> pos-sum pôt-es pôt-est pos-sûmus pôt-estis pos-sunt	<i>I go.</i> eo is it imus itis eunt	<i>Active.</i> <i>I bear.</i> fêro fers fert ferimus fertis ferunt	<i>Passive.</i> <i>I am borne.</i> feror feris fertur ferimur ferimini feruntur	<i>I wish.</i> vôlo vis vult volumus vultis volunt	<i>I do not wish.</i> nôlo nonvis nonvult nolumus nonvultis nolunt	<i>I prefer.</i> malo mavis mavult malumus mavultis malunt	<i>I am made.</i> fio flis flit (fimus) (fitis) flunt
	Future Simple	ibo ibis	feram feres	ferar fereris	vôlam volēs	(nolam) noles	(malam) males	flam fles
	Imperfect	îbam îbas	ferëbam ferëbas	ferëbar ferëbaris	volëbam volëbas	noîëbam noîëbas	malëbam malëbas	fiëbam fiëbas
	Perfect	ii or ivi isti	tûli tulisti	latus sum " es	volui voluisti	nolui noluisti	malui maluisti	factus sum factus es
	Imperative	S. I P. Ite	fer ferte	ferre ferimini	—	S. noli P. nolite	—	(fi) (fite)
Subjunctive.	Present	eam eas	feram feras	ferar feraris	vêllim vellis	nôllim nollis	mâllim mallis	flam flas
	Imperfect	îrem îres	ferrem ferres	ferrer ferreris	vellem velles	nollem nolles	mallem malles	fiërem fiëres
	Perfect†	ierim ieris	tûlerim tuleris	latus sim " sis	voluërim voluëris	noluërim noluëris	maluërim maluëris	factus sim factus sis
Inf.	Present Perfect Future	îre îvisse (isse) îturus esse	ferre tûlissee laturus esse	ferri latus esse laturum iri	vêlle volu-isse —	nolle noluisse —	malle maluisse —	ferri factus esse factum iri
	Present Perfect Future	îens euntis — îturus	ferens — laturus	lâtus — —	volens — —	nolens — —	— — —	— factus —
Gerund Supine	—	eundum îtum	ferendum lâtum	—	volendum —	nolendum —	malendum —	— faciendus

† Future Perfect and Pluperfect formed regularly from Perfect Stem.

• Like the Future of sum, 3rd plural poterunt.

PREPOSITIONS.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Ad, to, into, near, according to, at, etc.:

e.g., Ad urbem ivit, he went to the city.

Ad portam stant, they stand at (or near) the gate.

Adversus, against:

e.g., Veni separare hominem adversus patrem suum, I came to set a man at variance against his father.

Ante, before:

e.g., Ante ostium stant, they stand before the gate.

Ante tertiam horam, before the third hour.

Apud, at, among, with, at the house of, etc.:

e.g., Apud eum, at his house.

Verbum erat apud Deum, the Word was with God.

Circa, about, around, at, concerning:

e.g., circa initium, at the beginning.

circa me, around me.

Contra, against, over against:

e.g., Qui non est mecum, contra me est, he that is not with me, is against me.

Erga, towards (of feelings):

e.g., Benevolentia amicorum erga nos, the kindness of our friends towards us.

Inter, among, between, during, etc.:

e.g., Inter nos, among us.

Inter coenam, during supper.

Juxta, near, according to, close beside:

e.g., Stabat Mater juxta crucem, His Mother was standing beside the cross.

Ob, on account of:

e.g., ob hoc scelus, on account of this crime.

Penes, in the hands of:

e.g., Penes regem, in the hands of the king.

Praeter, besides, beyond, except:

e.g., Omnes praeter te, all except you.

Praeter domum ivit, he went past the house.

Praeter spem, beyond hope.

Per, through, by means of, by (in oaths):

e.g., Per multas noctes, through many nights.

Per hanc dexteram, by this right hand (I beseech you).

Propter, on account of, owing to, for:

e.g., Grátias ágimus tibi propter magnam glóriam tuam, we give thee thanks for thy great glory.

Post, after, behind:

e.g., Post haec, after this.

Post me secutus est, he followed behind me.

Secundum, according to, after:

e.g., Secundum verbum tuum, according to thy word.

Secus, along, beside:

e.g., Secus mare, beside the sea.

Supra, above, on, upon, beyond:

e.g., Ambulans supra mare, walking on the sea.

Benedictus supra omnes, blessed beyond all.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING ABLATIVE CASE.

A, ab, abs, from, by :

e.g., *Ab urbe venit, he came from the city.*
Laudátus ab ómnibus, praised by all.

Absque, without :

e.g., *Absque foédere, without fidelity.*

Coram, in the presence of, before :

e.g., *Coram rege, in the presence of the king.*

Clam, secretly, without the knowledge of :

e.g., *Clam me, without my knowledge.*

Cum, with, together with (enclitic with me, te, se, nobis, vobis) :

e.g., *Venit cum discipulis, he came with the disciples.*

Pax vobiscum, Peace be with you.

De, from, down from, concerning, about, of :

e.g., *Descéndit de coelis, He came down from heaven.*

De his rebus audiui, I have heard of these things.

E, ex, out of, according to :

e.g., *Ex urbe ivit, he went out of the city.*

Ex foédere, in accordance with the treaty.

Pro, for, on behalf of, instead of, before :

e.g., *Ora pro nobis, pray for us.*

Regnávít pro patre, he reigned instead of his father.

Pro castris, before the camp.

Prae, for, because of, compared with, before :

e.g., *Prae dolore non pótuit loqui, he could not speak for grief.*

Benedícta tu es prae ómnibus muliéribus, Blessed art thou before all women.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING BOTH ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

In, (a) with Accusative, into, for, in, etc.:

e.g., *In urbem venit, he came into the city.*

In aetérnum, for ever.

In vicem, in turn.

(b) with Ablative, in, on, at, before, etc.:

e.g., *In urbe est, he is in the city.*

In tali témpore, at such a time.

In óculis ómnium est, he is before everyone's eyes.

Sub, (a) with Accusative, under (of motion under), about, towards, etc.:

e.g., *Sub terram descéndit, he went down under the earth.*

Sub noctem, about night, towards night.

(b) with Ablative, under (of rest under), at the foot of, beneath.

e.g., *Sub terrâ hábitat, he lives underground.*

Sub monte stetit, he stood at the foot of the mountain.

Super, (a) with Accusative, over, above, beyond, upon, etc.:

e.g., *Non est discipulus super magistrum, the disciple is not above the master.*

Super flúmina Babylónis illic sédimus et flévimus, beside the rivers of Babylon there we sat and wept.

(b) with Ablative, concerning, about.

e.g., *Super hac re, concerning this matter.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF IRREGULAR VERBS IN COMMON USE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
abeo	-īre	abii	abītum	go away
abscido	-ēre	abscidi	abscisum	cut off
abscondo	-ēre	abscondi	absconditum	hide
absolvo	-ēre	absolvi	absolūtum	absolve
abstineo	-ēre	abstinui	abstentum	abstain
accēdo	-ēre	accessi	accessum	approach
accendo	-ēre	accendi	accensum	kindle
accido	-ēre	accidi	—	happen
accingo	-ēre	accinxi	accinctum	gird
accipio	-ēre	accēpi	acceptum	receive
adeo	-īre	adii	aditum	go to
adjūvo	-āre	adjūvi	adjūtum	help
advēnio	-īre	advēni	adventum	come
affero	-re	attūli	allātum	bring to
ago	-ēre	ēgi	actum	do, act, drive
aperio	-ire	aperui	apertum	open
ardeo	-ēre	arsui	arsum	burn (intr.)
ascendo	-ēre	ascendi	ascensum	ascend
assumo	-ēre	assumpsi	assumptum	assume
audeo	-ēre	ausus sum	—	dare
aufero	-re	abstūli	ablātum	take away
averto	-ēre	averti	aversum	turn away
benedico	-ēre	benedixi	benedictum	bless
bibo	-ere	bibi	bibitum	drink
cādo	-ēre	cēcīdi	cāsum	fall
caedo	-ēre	cēcīdi	caesum	strike
cāno	-ēre	cēcīni	cantum	sing
cāpio	-ēre	cēpi	captum	take
carpo	-ēre	carpsi	carptum	pluck
cāveo	-ēre	cāvi	cautum	beware
cēdo	-ēre	cessi	cessum	yield
cerno	-ēre	crēvi	crētum	behold
cingo	-ēre	cinxi	cinctum	gird
claudio	-ēre	clausi	clausum	shut
cognosco	-ēre	cognōvi	cognitum	know
cōgo	-ēre	coēgi	coactum	compel
colligo	-ēre	collēgi	collectum	collect
cōlo	-ēre	cōlui	cultum	worship, till
comēdo	-ēre	comēdi	comēsūm	eat
compello	-ēre	compūli	compulsum	compel
complēo	-ēre	complēvi	complētum	accomplish
comprehendo	-ēre	comprehendi	comprehensum	comprehend, seize
compungo	-ēre	compunxi	compunctum	grieve for
concupio	-ēre	concupi	conceptum	conceive

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
condo	-ēre	condidi	conditum	<i>lay up, build</i>
confero	-re	contūli	collatum	<i>bring together</i>
confido	-ēre	confisus sum	—	<i>trust</i>
confiteor	-ēri	confessus sum	—	<i>confess</i>
constituo	-ēre	constitui	constitutum	<i>establish</i>
contemno	-ēre	contempsi	contemptum	<i>despise</i>
contingo	-ere	contigi	contactum	<i>happen</i>
converto	-ēre	converti	conversum	<i>convert</i>
crēdo	-ēre	crēdidi	crēditum	<i>believe</i>
cresco	-ēre	crēvi	crētum	<i>increase, grow</i>
crucifigo	-ēre	crucifixi	crucifixum	<i>crucify</i>
cupio	-ēre	cupīvi	cupitum	<i>desire</i>
curro	-ēre	cucurri	cursum	<i>run</i>
dēcerno	-ēre	dēcrēvi	dēcrētum	<i>decree</i>
dēdo	-ēre	dēdidi	dēditum	<i>give up</i>
dēfendo	-ēre	dēfendi	dēfensum	<i>defend</i>
dēficio	-ēre	dēfeci	dēfectum	<i>fail</i>
dēleo	-ēre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	<i>blot out</i>
dēpono	-ēre	dēposui	dēpositum	<i>order</i>
dēscendo	-ēre	descendi	dēscensum	<i>descend</i>
dēsēro	-ēre	dēsērui	dēsertum	<i>desert</i>
dēspicio	-ēre	dēspexi	dēspectum	<i>look down on</i>
dīco	-ēre	dixi	dictum	<i>say</i>
dīligo	-ēre	dilexi	dilectum	<i>love</i>
dimitto	-ēre	dimisi	dimissum	<i>send away</i>
dīrigo	-ēre	dīrexi	dīrectum	<i>direct</i>
discēdo	-ēre	discessi	discessum	<i>depart</i>
discerno	-ēre	discrēvi	discretum	<i>distinguish</i>
disco	-ēre	didici	—	<i>learn</i>
dīvido	-ēre	dīvisi	dīvisum	<i>divide</i>
do	dāre	dēdi	dātum	<i>give</i>
dōceo	-ēre	dōcui	dōctum	<i>teach</i>
dōmo	-āre	dōmui	dōmitum	<i>subdue</i>
dūco	-ēre	duxi	ductum	<i>lead</i>
ēdo	-ēre	ēdi	ēsum	<i>eat</i>
ējicio	-ēre	ējeci	ējectum	<i>cast out</i>
ēmo	-ēre	ēmi	emptum	<i>buy</i>
eo	īre	īvi	ītum	<i>go</i>
ēriġo	-ēre	ērexi	ērectum	<i>lift</i>
ēvādo	-ēre	ēvāsi	ēvāsūm	<i>escape</i>
expello	-ēre	expūli	expulsum	<i>expel</i>
extendo	-ēre	extendi	extensum	<i>stretch forth</i>
fācio	-ēre	fāci	factum	<i>do, make</i>
fallo	-ēre	fēfelli	falsum	<i>deceive</i>
fāteor	-ēri	fassus sum	—	<i>confess</i>
fēro	ferre	tūli	lātum	<i>bear</i>

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
fido	-ēre	fisus sum	—	trust
figo	-ēre	fixi	fixum	fix
findo	-ēre	fidi	fissum	cleave
tingo	-ēre	finxi	fictum	form, feign
fio	fiēri	factus sum	—	become
flecto	-ēre	flexi	flexum	bend
flēo	-ēre	flēvi	flētum	weep
flūo	-ēre	fluxi	fluxum	flow
fōdio	-ēre	fōdi	fossam	dig, pierce
fōveo	-ēre	fōvi	fōtum	cherish
frango	-ēre	frēgi	fractum	break
fūgio	-ēre	fūgi	fūgitum	flee
fundo	-ēre	fūdi	fūsum	pour
gaudeo	-ēre	gavisus sum	—	rejoice
gēmo	-ēre	gēmui	gemitum	moan
gēro	-ēre	gessi	gestum	do, wage
gigno	-ēre	gēnui	genitum	give birth to
gradior	-i	gressus sum	—	walk
haereo	-ēre	haesi	haesum	stick
haurio	-īre	hausi	haustum	draw
ignosco	-ēre	ignōvi	ignōtum	pardon
implēo	-ēre	implēvi	implētum	fill
imprimo	-ēre	impressi	impressum	impress
indūco	-ēre	induxi	inductum	lead in
indulgeo	-ēre	indulsi	indultum	indulge, pardon
indūo	-ēre	indūi	indūtum	clothe
infero	-re	intūli	illatum	bring in
infundo	-ēre	infūdi	infūsum	pour in
insto	-āre	institi	—	press on
intelligo	-ēre	intellexi	intellectum	understand
intendo	-ēre	intendi	{intensum} {intentum}	incline
intercēdo	-ēre	intercessi	intercessum	intercede
interficio	-ēre	interfēci	interfectum	kill
introeo	-īre	introīi	introitum	enter
invēnio	-īre	invēni	inventum	find
involvero	-ēre	involve	invōlūtum	wrap up
irascor	-i	irātus sum	—	be angry
jacio	-ēre	jēci	jactum	throw
jūbeo	-ēre	jussi	jussum	command
jungo	-ēre	junxi	junctum	join
jūvo	-āre	jūvi	jūtum	help
lābor	-i	lapsus sum	—	slip
lāvo	-āre	lāvi	{lotum} {lautum}	wash

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
lĕgo	-ĕre	lĕgi	lectum	read, pick, choose
lŏquor	-i	locutus sum	—	speak
lŭdo	-ĕre	lŭsi	lŭsum	play
lŭgeo	-ĕre	luxi	luctum	mourn
mălēdico	-ĕre	mălēdixi	mălēdictum	curse
măneo	-ĕre	mansi	mansum	remain
—	meminisse	memini	—	remember
mĕto	-ĕre	messui	messum	reap
mĕtuo	-ĕre	mĕtui	—	fear
misceo	-ĕre	miscui	{ mistum } { mixtum }	mix
miſĕreor	-ĕri	misertus sum	—	pity
mitto	-ĕre	misi	missum	send
mordeo	-ĕre	mŏmordi	morsum	bite
mŏrior	-i	mortuus sum	—	die
mŏveo	-ĕre	mŏvi	mŏtum	move
nascor	-i	nātus sum	—	be born
neglĕgo	-ĕre	neglexi	neglectum	neglect
nitor	-i	{ nisus } { nixus } sum	—	strive
nosco	-ĕre	nŏvi	nŏtum	know
nŭbo	-ĕre	nupsi	nuptum	marry
obliviscor	-i	oblītus sum	—	forget
obrŭo	-ĕre	obrŭi	obrŭtum	bury
obtineo	-ĕre	obtinui	obtentum	obtain
occido	-ĕre	occidi	occisum	kill
occido	-ĕre	occidi	occāsum	fall, die
occŭlo	-ĕre	occŭlui	occultum	hide
occurro	-ĕre	occurri	occursum	meet
—	odisse	ŏdi	—	hate
offendo	-ĕre	offendi	offensum	strike
offero	-re	obtuli	oblātum	offer
opprimo	-ĕre	oppressi	oppressum	oppress
ordior	-iri	orsus sum	—	begin
orior	-iri	ortus sum	—	rise
ostendo	-ĕre	ostendi	ostensum	show
pando	-ĕre	pansi	{ pansum } { passum }	spread
pango	-ĕre	panxi	pactum	compose
parco	-ĕre	pēperci	parsum	spare
pārio	-ĕre	pepēri	partum	bring forth
pasco	-ĕre	pāvi	pastum	feed
patior	-i	passus sum	—	suffer
pāveo	-ĕre	pāvi	—	fear, quake
pello	-ĕre	pēpŭli	pulsum	drive

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
pendeo	-ēre	pēpendi	—	hang (intr.)
pendo	-ēre	pependi	pensum	weigh
percütio	-ēre	percussi	percutsum	strike
perdo	-ēre	perldi	perditum	lose, destroy
pereo	-īre	perii	peritum	perish
perficio	-ēre	perfeci	perfectum	finish
pergo	-ēre	perrexi	perrectum	proceed
permitto	-ēre	permisi	permissum	permit
persequor	-i	persecutus sum	—	persecute
pōto	-ēre	petivi	petitum	seek
pingo	-ēre	pinxi	pictum	paint
plango	-ēre	planxi	placatum	lament, beat
plaudo	-ēre	plausi	plausum	applaud
pōno	-ēre	pōsui	pōsitum	place
posco	-ēre	pōposci	—	demand
possideo	-ēre	possēdi	possessum	possess
pōto	-āre	pōtāvi	{ pōtum pōtātum }	drink
praesto	-āre	praestiti	praestitum	give, excel
prēmo	-ēre	pressi	pressum	press
prōcēdo	-ēre	prōcessi	prōcessum	proceed
prōcido	-ēre	procidi	—	fall down
prōdo	-ēre	prōdidi	prōditum	betray
prōficiācor	-i	prōfectus sum	—	set out
prōgredior	-i	prōgressus sum	—	advance
prōmitto	-ēre	prōmisi	prōmissum	promise
prōmo	-ēre	prompsi	promptum	bring out
prōtēgo	-ēre	prōtexi	prōtectum	protect
quaero	-ēre	quaesivi	quaesitum	seek
quātio	-ēre	quassi	quassum	shake
queo	quīre	quīvi	quītum	be able
quiesco	-ēre	quīēvi	quīētum	rest
rāpio	-ēre	rāpui	raptum	seize
rēcumbo	-ēre	rēcūbui	—	recline
reddo	-ēre	reddidi	redditum	give back
rēdimō	-ēre	rēdēmi	redemptum	redeem
rēgo	-ēre	rexī	rectum	rule
rēlinquo	-ēre	rēliqui	rēlictum	leave
rēmitto	-ēre	rēmisi	rēmissum	remit
rēpo	-ēre	repsi	reptum	creep
rēquiesco	-ēre	rēquīēvi	requīētum	rest
rēsisto	-ēre	restiti	—	resist
respondeo	-ēre	respondi	responsum	answer
restitūo	-ēre	restitui	restitutum	restore
rēsurgō	-ēre	rēsurrexi	resurrectum	rise again
rēvolvō	-ēre	rēvolvi	rēvolūtum	roll back
rideo	-ēre	rīsi	risum	laugh

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
rumpo	-ĕre	rūpi	ruptum	<i>break</i>
rūo	-ĕre	rūi	{ rūitum } { rūtum }	<i>rush</i>
scando	-ĕre	scandi	scansum	<i>climb</i>
scindo	-ĕre	scīdi	scissum	<i>cut, tear</i>
scribo	-ĕre	scripsi	scriptum	<i>write</i>
sēco	-āre	sēcui	sectum	<i>cut</i>
sēdeo	-ĕre	sēdi	sessum	<i>sit</i>
sentio	-īre	sensi	sensum	<i>feel</i>
sēpēlio	-īre	sēpēlivi	sēpultum	<i>bury</i>
sēquor	-ī	secūtus sum	—	<i>follow</i>
sēro	-ĕre	sērui	sertum	<i>join</i>
sēro	-ĕre	sēvi	sātum	<i>sow</i>
sīno	-ĕre	sīvi	sītum	<i>allow</i>
sōleo	-ĕre	sōlītus sum	—	<i>be wont</i>
solvo	-ĕre	solvi	sōlūtum	<i>loose</i>
spargo	-ĕre	sparsi	sparsum	<i>scatter, sprinkle</i>
sperno	-ĕre	sprēvi	sprētum	<i>despise</i>
spondeo	-ĕre	spōpondi	sponsum	<i>promise</i>
stātūo	-ĕre	stātui	stātūtum	<i>set up</i>
sterno	-ĕre	strāvi	strātum	<i>strew</i>
sto	-āre	stēti	stātum	<i>stand</i>
stringo	-ĕre	strinxi	strictum	<i>bind</i>
subvēnio	-īre	subvēni	subventum	<i>come to help</i>
succendo	-ĕre	succendi	succensum	<i>kindle</i>
succurro	-ĕre	succurri	succursum	<i>succour</i>
suffero	-re	sustūli	sublātum	<i>suffer</i>
sūmo	-ĕre	sumpsi	sumptum	<i>take</i>
surgo	-ĕre	surrexi	surrectum	<i>rise</i>
suscipio	-ĕre	suscēpi	susceptum	<i>undertake</i>
suspicio	-ĕre	suspexi	suspectum	<i>look up to</i>
tango	-ĕre	tētīgi	tactum	<i>touch</i>
tego	-ĕre	texi	tectum	<i>cover</i>
tendo	-ĕre	tetendi	{ tentum } { tensum }	<i>stretch</i>
teneo	-ĕre	tenui	tentum	<i>hold</i>
tero	-ĕre	trīvi	tritum	<i>rub</i>
texo	-ĕre	texui	textum	<i>weave</i>
tollo	-ĕre	sustūli	sublātum	<i>take away</i>
tondeo	-ĕre	tōtondi	tonsum	<i>shave</i>
tōno	-āre	tōnui	tōnitum	<i>thunder</i>
torqueo	-ĕre	torsi	tortum	<i>twist</i>
torreo	-ĕre	torrui	tostum	<i>roast</i>
trādo	-ĕre	trādidi	trāditum	<i>betray</i>
trāho	-ĕre	traxi	tractum	<i>draw</i>
transfigo	-ĕre	transfixi	transfixum	<i>pierce</i>

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
tremō	-ēre	tremui	—	<i>tremble</i>
tribuo	-ēre	tribui	tribūtum	<i>bestow</i>
unguo	-ēre	unxi	unctum	<i>anoint</i>
urgeo	-ēre	ursi	—	<i>urge</i>
ūro	-ēre	ussi	ustum	<i>burn</i>
ūtor	-i	ūsus sum	—	<i>use</i>
vādo	-ēre	vāsi	—	<i>go</i>
vēho	-ēre	vexi	vectum	<i>carry</i>
vello	-ēre	{ velli } { vulsi }	vulsum	<i>pluck</i>
vendo	-ēre	vendidi	venditum	<i>sell</i>
venio	-īre	vēni	ventum	<i>come</i>
verto	-ēre	verti	versum	<i>turn</i>
vēto	-āre	vētui	vētītum	<i>forbid</i>
video	-ēre	vīdi	vīsum	<i>see</i>
vincio	-īre	vinxi	vinctum	<i>bind</i>
vinco	-ēre	vīci	victum	<i>conquer</i>
vivo	-ēre	vixi	victum	<i>live</i>

SUMMARY OF SYNTAX

I.

USE OF CASES.

1. **The Nominative Case**—subject of sentence:
e.g., Discípuli fugérunt, the disciples fled.
2. **The Vocative Case**—case of person addressed:
e.g., Miserére nobis, Dómine, have mercy on us, () Lord.
3. **The Accusative Case.**
 - (i.) Object of sentence:
e.g., Regem vidérunt, they saw the king.
 - (ii.) Duration of time:
e.g., Tres dies manebámus, we remained three days.
 - (iii.) Extent of space:
e.g., Tria millia pássuum progréssi sunt, they advanced three miles.
 - (iv.) Goal (usually with preposition):
Ad urbem venérunt, they came to the city.
 - (v.) Double accusative (after verbs of asking, teaching, concealing):
e.g., Eos panem rogávi, I asked them for bread.
4. **The Genitive Case.**
 - (i.) Possessive:
e.g., Num custos fratris mei ego sum? Am I my brother's keeper?
 - (ii.) Partitive:
e.g., Quot vestrum vénient? How many of you will come?
 - (iii.) Objective:
e.g., Miserére mei, have mercy on me.
 - (iv.) Descriptive:
e.g., Quid tímidi estis, módicae fidei? Why are ye fearful, O ye of little faith?
5. **The Dative Case.**
 - (i.) Indirect Object:
e.g., Hoc mihi dedit, he gave this to me.

(ii.) Possessive:

e.g., Liber est mihi, I have a book (lit. there is a book to me).

(iii.) Predicative:

e.g., Eritis ódio ómnibus géntibus, you shall be hated by all nations (lit. you shall be for a hatred to all nations).

(iv.) After many verbs in Latin (*e.g., credo, impero, parco, páreo, suádeo, sérvio, etc.*):

e.g., Tibi crēdo, I believe you.

6. The Ablative Case.

(i.) Instrumental:

e.g., Rex gládio occísus est, the king was slain by a sword.

(ii.) Agent (with *ab*):

e.g., Rex a mīlite occísus est, the king was slain by a soldier.

(iii.) Separation (often with a preposition):

e.g., Líbera nos a malo, deliver us from evil.

(iv.) Manner (usually with *cum*):

e.g., Susceperunt verbum cum omni aviditatē, they received the word with all eagerness.

(v.) Cause:

e.g., Morbo mórtuus est, he died of disease.

(vi.) Price:

e.g., Hoc emi denário, I bought this for penny.

(vii.) Time:

e.g., Tértiâ vigiliâ venit, he came at the third watch.

(viii.) Measure of difference:

e.g., Ille multo sapiéntior est, he is far wiser.

(ix.) Comparison:

e.g., Templo major est hic: there is here a greater than the temple.

(x.) Locative (usually with a preposition):

In urbe est, he is in the city.

(xi.) Description:

e.g., Beáti mundo corde, Blessed are the clean of heart.

(xii.) After certain adjectives (*e.g., dignus, indignus, plenus, conténtus, etc.*):

e.g., Plena gratiâ, full of grace.

- (xiii.) After certain verbs (*e.g.*, **fruor**, **fungor**, **pótior**, **utor**, **vescor**, etc.):
e.g., **Hōc stilo utor**, *I am using this pen.*
- (xiv.) Ablative Absolute:
e.g., **Hoc audito**, *abierunt*, *hearing this, they went away.*

II.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

The **Present**, **Future**, **Future-Perfect**, and **Perfect** (with *have*) Tenses of the Indicative Mood are called **primary** Tenses, and must be followed by corresponding (primary) tenses of the Subjunctive in a subordinate clause, if the Subjunctive Mood is required. The primary tenses of the Subjunctive are the **Present** and **Perfect**.

e.g., **Venio ut te videam**, *I am coming to see you.*
Rogabit quid fecerim, *he will ask what I have done.*

The **Imperfect**, **Pluperfect**, and **Perfect** (without *have*) Tenses of the Indicative are **secondary** tenses, and must be followed by secondary (**Imperfect** or **Pluperfect**) tenses of the Subjunctive.

e.g., **Veni ut te vidērem**, *I came to see you.*
Rogāvit quid fecissem, *he asked what I had done.*

This rule of sequence of tenses is, however, often violated in Ecclesiastical Latin.

III.

CLAUSES.

1. Noun Clauses.

(i.) Indirect Statement.

(1) Accusative and Infinitive Construction:

e.g., **Dicit regem mōrtuum esse**, *he says that the king is dead.*

(2) **quod**, **quia**, or **quóniam** with Indicative:

e.g., **Confiteor quia peccávi**, *I confess that I have sinned.*

(3) **quod**, **quia**, or **quóniam** with Subjunctive:

e.g., **Scimus quóniam hoc verum sit**, *we know that this is true.*

N.B.—(2) and (3) are not found in Classical Latin.

(ii.) **Indirect Command.**

(1) Infinitive Construction :*

*e.g., Jussit eum **abire**, he ordered him to depart.*

(2) An **ut** clause followed by Subjunctive.

*e.g., Orávit eum **ut veniret**, he prayed him to come.*

(3) A clause in the Subjunctive without **ut** :

*e.g., Vos obsécro **audiátis** me, I beg you to hear me.*

(iii.) **Indirect Question.**

(1) An Interrogative word followed by Subjunctive:

*e.g., Eum rogávi **quid fáceret**, I asked him what he was doing.*

(2) An Interrogative word followed by the Indicative:

*e.g., Dómine, nescimus **quo vadis**, Lord, we know not whither thou goest.*

N.B.—(2) is not found in Classical Latin.

2. Adjectival Clauses.

(1) A Relative Pronoun followed by Indicative:

*e.g., Hic est **qui** regem **occídít**, this is the man who slew the king.*

(2) A Relative Pronoun followed by Subjunctive.

(a) to express purpose:

*e.g., Hómines misit **qui** hoc **fácerent**, he sent men to do this.*

(b) to express result:

*e.g., Pater tales quaerit **qui** **adórent** eum, the Father seeketh such to adore him.*

(c) after **dignus** and **indignus** :

*e.g., **Dignus** est **qui** hoc **fáciat**, he is worthy to do this.*

3. Adverbial Clauses.(i.) **Temporal Clauses.**(1) A temporal Conjunction (*e.g., dum, quando, ut, postquam,* etc.), followed by Indicative:

*e.g., **Dum** **spiro**, spero, while I breathe I hope; Venit nox, **quando** nemo **potest** operári, the night cometh when no man can work.*

(2) A temporal Conjunction (*e.g., cum, donec,* etc.) followed by the Subjunctive:

*e.g., **Cum** hoc **fecissent**, abiérunt, when they had done this they departed.*

* In Classical Latin this is limited to the verbs **júbeo** and **veto**.

(ii.) **Final Clauses**—expressing purpose.(1) An **ut** clause with Subjunctive:

e.g., Jesus ductus est in désertum **ut tentarétur**, *Jesus was led into the desert to be tempted.*

(2) An **ut** clause with **non** (if negative) with Subjunctive:

e.g., Nolíte iudicáre **ut non iudicémini**, *judge not, that you may not be judged.*

(3) A **ne** clause (if negative) with Subjunctive:

e.g., In mánibus tollent te, **ne forte offéndas** ad lápidem pedem tuum, *in their hands shall they bear thee up, lest perhaps thou dash thy foot against a stone.*

(4) A Relative clause with Subjunctive:

e.g., Hómines adsunt **qui respónsum dent**, *the men are here to give an answer.*

(5) An Infinitive clause:

e.g., Ventúrus est **iudicáre** vivos et mortuos, *He shall come to judge both the living and the dead.*

N.B.—(2) and (5) are not found in Classical Latin.

(iii.) **Consecutive Clauses**—expressing result.(1) **ut** (or **ut non** if negative) with Subjunctive:

e.g., Flumen tam altum est **ut non póssimus** transíre, *the river is so deep that we cannot cross it.*

(2) A Relative with Subjunctive:

e.g., Pater tales quaerit **qui adórent** eum, *the Father seeketh such to adore him.*

(iv.) **Causal Clauses.**(1) A clause introduced by **quia**, **quóniam**, **quod**, with Indicative:

e.g., Exi a me, **quia** homo peccátor **sum**, Dómine, *Depart from me, for I am a sinful man, O Lord.*

(2) A clause introduced by **cum** (= *since*) with Subjunctive:

e.g., Hi hómines contúrbant civitátem nostram, **cum sint** Judaéi, *these men disturb our city being (i.e., because they are) Jews.*

(3) A clause introduced by **quia**, **quóniam**, or **quod**, with Subjunctive, to imply suggested reason:

e.g., Eum occídit **quod** próditor **esset**, *he put him to death on the ground that he was a traitor.*

N.B.—In Ecclesiastical Latin the Subjunctive often follows **quia**, **quóniam**, and **quod** to express actual cause.

(v.) **Concessive Clauses.**

A Clause introduced by **cum, quamvis, etsi, quamquam**, etc. (meaning *although*), with Subjunctive:

e.g., Et non invenérunt, cum multi falsi testes accessissent, and they found not, although many false witnesses had come in.

(vi.) **Conditional Clauses.**

(1) Open conditions, in present or past time, implying nothing as regards fulfilment or non-fulfilment—Indicative in both clauses:

e.g., Si hoc facis, peccas, if you are doing this, you are doing wrong; Si hoc fecisti, peccavisti, if you did this, you did wrong.

(2) Unfulfilled Conditions.

(a) In present time, Imperfect Subjunctive in both clauses:

e.g., Si adésset, ei créderem, if he were here, I would believe him.

(b) In past time, Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses: *e.g., Si adfuissem, hoc tibi dedissem, if I had been there, I would have given you this.*

(c) Past time in protasis (*if* clause), present in apodosis (principal clause); Pluperfect Subjunctive in protasis, Imperfect Subjunctive in apodosis:

e.g., Si hoc fecisses, non in cárcere nunc esses, if you had done this, you would not now be in prison.

(3) Future Conditions.

(a) Probable—Future or Future-Perfect Indicative in protasis, Future Indicative (or Imperative) in apodosis:

e.g., Si in urbem vénero, hoc emam, if I come to town, I will buy this.

(b) Possible but Improbable—Present Subjunctive in both clauses:

e.g., Si hoc fácias, pecces, if you were to do this, you would do wrong.

IV.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The Ablative Absolute consists of a noun and participle, a pronoun and participle, or a noun or pronoun and adjective, together in the Ablative case, forming a phrase roughly answering to the Nominative Absolute in English:

e.g., Her father being dead, she had to leave home.

This in Latin would be **patre mórtuo**, domo abíre eam opórtuit.

The Ablative Absolute is a very common construction in Latin owing to the absence of the past participle active. It is impossible to say in Latin, *having done this he went home*; the sentence must be turned passively, *this having been done, he went home*, and the Ablative Absolute construction used: **Hoc facto**, domum ivit.

The Ablative Absolute may represent the following kinds of clauses:—

- (i.) Temporal:
e.g., His dictis, ábiit, when he had said this, he departed.
- (ii.) Causal:
e.g., Fratre mórtuo, domum rédiit, because his brother was dead, he returned home.
- (iii.) Concessive:
e.g., Ómnibus audiéntibus nemo locútus est, though all were listening, no one spoke.

V.

QUESTIONS.

Questions are asked in Latin—

- (i.) By an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb:
e.g., Quid facis? What are you doing?
- (ii.) By a mark of interrogation at the end of the sentence: *
e.g., Tu es rex Judaeórum? Art thou the king of the Jews?
- (iii.) By **nonne** (or **an**) if an affirmative answer is expected:
e.g., Nonne hoc verum est? Surely this is true?
- (iv.) By **num** (or **numquid**) if a negative answer is expected:
e.g., Num custos fratris mei ego sum? Am I my brother's keeper?

* In Classical Latin the particle **-ne** is suffixed to the first word in the sentence—*e.g., Tunc es rex Judaeórum?*

VI.

TIME.

Time is expressed in Latin—

- (i.) By the Accusative to denote “how long”:

e.g., **Tres horas** ibi manébat, *he remained there three hours.*

- (ii.) By the Ablative to denote:

- (a) Point of time (time “when”):

e.g., **Tertiâ horâ** profectus est, *he set out at the third hour.*

- (b) Time “within which”:

e.g., **Quinque diébus** redíbit, *he will return within five days.*

N.B.—In Ecclesiastical Latin the Ablative is often used for time “how long”:

e.g., **Cum jejúnasset quadragínta diébus et quadragínta noctibus**, postea esúriit, *when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, afterwards he was hungry.*

VII.

WISHES.

- (i.) Wishes for the future are expressed by the Present Subjunctive (negative **ne**):

e.g., **Cito véniat!** *May he come quickly!* **Ne péreas!** *May you not perish!*

- (ii.) Wishes for the present are expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive with **út**inam (=would that) (negative **ne**):

e.g., **Útinam adésset!** *Would that he were here!*

- (iii.) Wishes for the past are expressed by the Pluperfect Subjunctive with **út**inam (negative **ne**):

Útinam ne hoc fecissem! *Would that I had not done this!*

VIII.

PROHIBITIONS.

Prohibitions are expressed by—

(i.) **Noli** with the Infinitive:

e.g., Noli hoc facere, do not do this (lit. be unwilling to do this).

(ii.) **Ne** with the Perfect Subjunctive:

e.g., Ne hoc féceris, do not do this.

(iii.) **Ne** with the Present Subjunctive:

e.g., Ne occidas, do not kill.

N.B.—In Ecclesiastical Latin **non** is used as well as **ne** :

e.g., Non miréris, wonder not.

IX.

THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

The **Gerund** is a Verbal noun ending in **-ndum** (2nd Declension neuter), and is Active in Voice.

The **Gerundive** is a Verbal Adjective ending in **-ndus, -a, -um**, and is Passive in Voice. Only transitive verbs have a Gerundive.

The Gerund or Gerundive used with the verb *to be* expresses obligation. The person on whom the obligation falls is put in the Dative case (*Dative of Agent*):

e.g., Nobis redeúndum est, we must return (Gerund).

Inimíci nobis amándi sunt, we must love our enemies (Gerundive) (lit. our enemies must be loved by us).

The Gerund is used as a verbal noun in the oblique cases:

e.g., Cupído discéndi, the desire of learning.

Legéndo studet, he is devoted to reading.

Docéndo discimus, we learn by teaching.

If the verb is followed by a direct object, the Gerundive is used instead of the Gerund, the noun being used in the case required, and the Gerundive agreeing with it in number, gender, and case:

e.g., Cupído legéndae epístolae, the desire of reading the letter.

Legédis libris studet, he is devoted to reading books.

Docéndo discípulo ipsi discimus, by teaching a pupil we learn ourselves.

The Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive after the preposition **ad**, or the Genitive after **causâ**, expresses purpose:

e.g., **Progréssi sunt ad oppugnandum**, *they advanced to attack* (Gerund).

Progréssi sunt ad urbem oppugnandam, *they advanced to attack the city* (Gerundive).

Hoc dixit causâ nobis suadendi,* *he said this to persuade us* (Gerund).

Hoc dixit causâ mei juvâdi, *he said this to help me* (Gerundive).

X.

THE SUPINES.

The Supines are rarely used in Latin. The Supine in **-um** is used to express purpose after a verb of motion:

e.g., **Exi lusum**, *go out to play*.

The Supine in **-u** is used after an adjective where English uses an Infinitive:

e.g., **Mirâbile dictu**, *wonderful to relate*.

* Verbs that govern the Dative are intransitive in Latin, and therefore have no Gerundive.

FAMILIAR LATIN PRAYERS AND HYMNS.

(The English of all words used in the following passages will be found in the Vocabulary at the end of the book.)

PATER NOSTER.

Pater noster, qui es in coelis, sanctificétur nomen tuum; advéniat regnum tuum; fiat volúntas tua, sicut in coelo, et in terrâ. Panem nostram quotidíanum da nobis hódie. Et dimítte nobis débíta nostra, sicut et nos dimíttimus debitoribus nostris. Et ne nos indúcas in tentatióem: sed líbera nos a malo.

AVE MARÍA.

Ave María, grátiâ plena; Dóminus tecum; benedícta tu in muliéribus, et benedíctus fructus ventris tui, Jesus. Sancta María, Mater Dei, ora pro nobis peccatoribus, nunc et in horâ mortis nostrae.

APOSTLES' CREED.

Credo in Deum, Patrem omnipoténtem, Creatórem coeli et terrae. Et in Jesum Christum, Fílium ejus únicum, Dóminum nostrum; qui concéptus est de Spíritu Sancto, natus ex Mariâ Vírgine, passus sub Póntio Piláto, crucifíxus, mórtuus, et sepúltus; descéndit ad ínferos; tértiâ die resurréxit a mórtuis; ascéndit ad coelos; sedet ad dexteram Dei Patris omnipoténtis; inde ventúrus est judicáre vivos et mórtuos. Credo in Spíritum Sanctum, sanctam Ecclesiám Cathólicam, Sanctórum communió-nem, remissionem peccatórum, carnis resurrectionem, vitam aeternam.

GLÓRIA.

Glória Patri, et Fílio, et Spíritui Sancto. Sicut erat in princípío, et nunc, et semper, et in saécula saeculórum.

NICENE CREED.

Credo in unum Deum, Patrem omnipoténtem, Factórem coeli et terrae, visibílium ómnium et invisibílium. Et in unum Dóminum Jesum Christum, Fílium Dei unigénitum, et ex Patre natum ante ómnia saécula. Deum de Deo, Lumen de Lúmine; Deum

verum de Deo vero; génitum non factum; consubstantiálem Patri, per quem ómnia facta sunt. Qui propter nos hómines et propter nostram salutem, descendit de coelis. Et incarnátus est de Spíritu Sancto, ex Mariâ Virgine; et Homo factus est. Crucifixus étiam pro nobis, sub Póntio Piláto passus et sepúltus est. Et resurrexit tértiâ die secúndum Scriptúras; et ascendit in coelum, sedet ad dexteram Patris: et iterum ventúrus est cum gloriâ iudicáre vivos et mórtuos: cujus regni non erit finis. Et in Spíritum Sanctum Dóminum et vivificántem, qui ex Patre Fílioque procedit: qui cum Patre et Filio simul adorátur et conglorificátur; qui locútus est per Prophétas. Et unam sanctam Cathólicam et Apostólicam Ecclesiám. Confíteor unum baptísma in remissionem peccatórum. Et expécto resurrectionem mortuórum, et vitam ventúri saéculi.

GLÓRIA IN EXCÉLSIS DEO.

Glória in excélsis Deo; et in terrâ pax homínibus bonae voluntátis. Laudámus te; benedicimus te; adorámus te; glorificámus te. Grátias ágimus tibi propter magnam glóriam tuam, Dómine Deus, Rex coeléstis, Deus Pater omnipótens. Dómine Fili unigénite Jesu Christe; Dómine Deus, Agnus Dei, Fílius Patris. Qui tollis peccáta mundi, miserére nobis. Qui tollis peccáta mundi, súscipe deprecationem nostram. Qui sedes ad dexteram Patris, miserére nobis. Quóniam tu solus sanctus, Tu solus Dóminus, Tu solus altíssimus, Jesu Christe. Cum Sancto Spíritu, in gloriâ Dei Patris.

THE ANGELUS.

V. Angelus Dómini nuntiávit Mariæ.

R. Et concépit de Spíritu Sancto.

Ave María, grátiâ plena, etc.

V. Ecce ancilla Dómini.

R. Fiat mihi secúndum verbum tuum.

Ave María.

V. Et verbum caro factum est.

R. Et habitávit in nobis.

Ave María.

Grátiam tuam quaesumus, Dómine, méntibus nostris infúnde, ut qui, ángelo nuntiánte, Christi Fílii tui Incarnationem cognóvimus, per Passiónem ejus et crucem ad Resurrectionis glóriam perducámur. Per eúndem Christum Dóminum nostrum.

MEMORÁRE.

Memoráre, O píssima Virgo María, non esse auditum a saéculo, quemquam ad tua curréntem praesídia, tua implorántem auxília, tua peténtem suffrágia, esse derelictum. Ego, tali animátus confidentiâ, ad te, Virgo Vírginum Mater, curro; ad te vénio; coram te gemens peccátor assisto. Noli, Mater Verbi, verba mea despícere, sed audi propítia et exaudi.

SALVE REGÍNA.

Salve Regína, mater misericórdiae; vita, dulcédo, et spes nostra, salve. Ad te clamámus, éxules fílii Hévae, ad te suspirámus, geméntes et flentes in hâc lacrymárum valle.

Eia ergo, Advocáta nostra, illos tuos misericórdes óculos ad nos convérte; et Jesum, benedíctum fructum ventris tui, nobis post hoc exílium osténde. O clemens, O pia, O dulcis Virgo María.

V. Ora pro nobis, sancta Dei Génitrix.

R. Ut digni efficiámur promissionibus Christi.

REGÍNA COELI.

Regína coeli laetáre, Allelúia.

Quia quem meruísti portáre, Allelúia.

Resurrexit sicut dixit, Allelúia.

Ora pro nobis Deum, Allelúia.

AVE VERUM.

Ave verum Corpus natum
Ex Mariâ Vírgine,
Vere passum, immolátum
In cruce pro hómine.

Cujus latus perforátum
Vero fluxit ságuine,
Esto nobis praegustátum
Mortis in exámine.

O clemens, o pie,

O dulcis Jesu, Fili Maríae !

O SALUTÁRIS.

O Salutáris Hóstia,
Quae coeli pandis óstium:
Bella premunt hostília,
Da robur, fer auxílium.

Uni trinóque Dómino
Sit sempitérna glória,
Qui vitam sine término
Nobis donet in pátriâ.

TANTUM ERGO.

Tantum ergo Sacraméntum
Venerémur cernui:
Et antiquum documéntum
Novo cedat rítui;
Praestet fides suppléméntum
Sénsuum deféctui.

Genitóri Genitóque
Laus et jubilátio,
Salus, honor, virtus quoque,
Sit et benedictio:
Procedénti ab utróque
Compar sit laudátio.

DE PROFUNDIS.

1. De profundis clamávi ad te, Dómine: Dómine exaúdi vocem meam.

2. Fiant aures tuae intendéntes, in vocem deprecationis meae.

3. Si iniquitátes observáveris, Dómine: Dómine, quis sustinébit ?

4. Quia apud te propitiátio est: et propter legem tuam sustínui te, Dómine.

5. Sustínuit ánima mea in verbo ejus: sperávit ánima mea in Dómino.

6. A custodiâ matutínâ usque ad noctem: speret Ísraël in Dómino.

7. Quia apud Dóminum misericórdia: et copiósia apud eum redemptio.

8. Et ipse rédimet Ísraël, ex ómnibus iniquitatibus ejus.

LITANY OF LORETO.

KÝRIE eléison.

Kýrie eléison.

Christe eléison.

Christe eléison.

Kýrie eléison.

Kýrie eléison.

Christe audi nos.

Christe exaúdi nos.

Pater de coelis Deus, *miserére nobis.*

Fili Redemptor mundi Deus, *miserére nobis.*

Spiritus Sancte Deus, *miserére nobis.*

Sancta Trínitas, unus Deus, *miserére nobis.*

Sancta María, *ora pro nobis.*

Sancta Dei Génitrix,

Sancta Virgo Vírginum,

Mater Christi,

Mater divínae grátiae,

Mater puríssima,

Mater castíssima,

Mater invioláta,

Mater intemeráta,

Mater amábilis,

Mater admirábilis,

Mater boni consilii,

Mater Creatóris,
Mater Salvatóris,
Virgo prudentíssima,
Virgo veneránda,
Virgo praedicánda,
Virgo potens,
Virgo clemens,
Virgo fidélis,
Spéculum justítiae,
Sedes sapiéntiae,
Causa nostrae laetítiae,
Vas spirituále,
Vas honorábile,
Vas insígne devotiónis,
Rosa mýstica,
Turris Davídica,
Turris ebúrnea,
Domus áurea,
Foéderis arca,
Jánua coeli,
Stella matutína,
Salus infirmórum,

Refúgium peccatórum,
Consolátrix afflictórum,
Auxílium Christianórum,
Regína angelórum,
Regína patriarchárum,
Regína prophetárum,
Regína apostolórum,
Regína mártýrum,
Regína confessórum,
Regína víginum,
Regína sanctórum ómnium,
Regína sine labe origináli concepta.
Regína sacratíssimi Rosárii,
Regína pacis,
Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, *parce nobis, Dómine.*
Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, *exaúdi nos, Dómine.*
Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, *miserére nobis.*

THE MEANINGS AND DERIVATIONS OF FAMILIAR CATHOLIC TERMS.

ASPERGES, from the Latin *aspérge*, *I sprinkle*: the ceremony of sprinkling the altar, clergy, and congregation with Holy Water at the beginning of High Mass, so called from the first word of the antiphon with which the ceremony begins: "**Aspérge me, Dómine, hyssópo, et mundábor,**" "*Thou shalt sprinkle me with hyssop and I shall be cleansed*" (Psalm L, 9).

CARDINAL, from the Latin *cardo*, *cardinis*, *a hinge*: hence the point on which anything turns. The original Hebrew word used for the Princes of the Philistines also means *an axle or hinge*.* The term *cardinal* was first used in Christian times to mean the permanent clergy of any church—i.e., those priests who were so indispensable to the work of the church that everything seemed to revolve round them, just as a door turns on its hinge.

CENACLE, from the Latin *cenáculum*, which literally meant *an eating-room*; then, as this was usually in the upper part of the house, it was used to mean an upper room, or even a garret or attic. The word is now used for the upper chamber at Jerusalem where Our Lord partook of the Last Supper with the Apostles.

CHASUBLE, from the Latin *cásula*, a diminutive of *casa*, *a hut*: the chief vestment worn by the celebrant at Mass.

CIBORIUM, from the Latin *cibórium* (Greek, *κιβώριον*), which literally meant the seed-pod of the Egyptian bean, but which was also used for a drinking vessel resembling the bean in shape. In England the term *Ciborium* is applied to the vessel in which the Blessed Sacrament is kept.

CONFIRMATION, from the Latin *confirmo*, *I strengthen*, hence the name given to the Sacrament which confers strengthening grace.

FERIA. The Latin word *fériae*, *holidays*, meant days on which the ancient Romans abstained from political and legislative work, and gave their slaves a holiday. Such days were those consecrated to any deity. Later, the *fériae* were kept for the observance of Christian feasts. To-day the term *féria* denotes the days of

* Cf. Josh. xiii, 3; Judg. iii, 3.

the week from Monday to Friday inclusive; this use of the word probably comes from the custom in the early Church of calling the Monday in Easter week the second feast-day, or *féria secúnda*, the Tuesday the third feast-day, or *féria tértia*, and so on; the practice was then adopted for all the days of the year except Saturdays and Sundays.

GENUFLECT, from the Latin *genu*, *a knee*, and *flecto*, *I bend*; literally, therefore, to genuflect means to bend the knee, though for a correct genuflection the knee should touch the ground.

INDULGENCE, from the Latin *indulgéntia*, a Roman legal term meaning a remission of punishment or taxation. A Plenary Indulgence, from the Latin *plenus*, *full*, is therefore an indulgence remitting the full temporal punishment due to sin.

JÁNUA COELI, *Gate of Heaven*, a title given to our Lady in the Litany of Loreto. Janus was the most ancient of all the kings of Italy. He built a small town on the River Tiber, called Janiculum, which was afterwards the name of one of the seven hills of Rome. After his death he was ranked among the gods, and was represented with two faces, one looking backward over the past, the other looking forward over the future. He had a small temple in the Forum,* with two doors opposite each other, which stood open in time of war, and shut in time of peace.† All doors, gates, avenues, and beginnings were sacred to Janus, and January, the month which begins the year, was called after him. In religious ceremonies his name was invoked first, since he was said to preside over the gate through which the prayers of men passed to the immortal gods. The word *jánua*, *a gateway*, or *door*, is derived from Janus, the god of gateways, and so, in the Litany of Loreto, the pagan idea which centred round the old Roman god, Janus, is transferred to our Lady, who is indeed the gateway through which our prayers pass to Heaven.

MASS, from the Latin *missa*, another form of *missio*, *dismissal*. The term was originally used for the two dismissals during the service, the first that of the catechumens, after the sermon, the second that of the rest of the congregation at the end of the proceedings.‡ It is curious that the word which signified a dismissal from the service should come to be used for the service

* The Forum was a large open space between the Palatine and Capitoline hills, where most of the business of Rome was transacted.

† In the course of seven hundred years they were only shut on three occasions.

‡ *Cf. Ite, missa est, Go, the mass is finished.*

itself, and some authorities support the explanation that in the sixth and seventh centuries, when the term **missa** began to have the meaning which we give to the word Mass, short Masses, consisting of the Canon only, were said at the end of the Canonical Hours, and came to be regarded as services of dismissal.

MONSTRANCE, from the Latin **monstro**, *I show* : the vessel in which the Blessed Sacrament is exposed or "shown forth" at Benediction or in procession.

PATEN, from the Latin **pátina**, *a dish* : the plate used to receive the Host consecrated at the Mass.

PISCINA, from the Latin **piscína**, *a fishpond*, or tank for keeping fish (from **piscis**, *a fish*). Later the word came to mean a basin or bath, and in the early Latin Church it was used to denote the baptismal font. In the Middle Ages it was applied to the niche in the wall on the Epistle side of the altar, containing a perforated basin through which was poured the water used in washing the priest's hands.

PONTIFF, PONTIFICATE, from the Latin **Póntifex**, which may be derived from **pons**, **pontis**, *a bridge*, and the root of **fácio**, *I make* or *build*, and thus means a bridge-builder. The term **Póntifex Máximus** meant the High Priest at Rome in ancient times; he was looked on as the builder of the bridge between gods and men. The office of Pontifex dates from the earliest period of Roman history.

RUBRICS, from the Latin **ruber**, *red*. The term **rúbrica** was first used to mean the red earth used by a carpenter in drawing a line on a piece of wood to show where to cut it. Later the word passed into the language of the law, and was used for the titles, maxims, decisions, etc., which were written in red. In Christian times it came to mean the directions and instructions to be followed in the Mass and other services; these were written in red ink, while the passages for recitation were written in black.

SACRAMENT, from the Latin **sacraméntum**, which was originally a legal term, and meant the *deposit*, or *pledge*, which both the plaintiff and the defendant were obliged to make at the beginning of a lawsuit. The one who lost his case forfeited the deposit, which was set aside for some sacred purpose, or for use in the temple. The word next came to mean the pledge, or oath, taken by a Roman soldier not to desert his standard in battle, and this meaning was afterwards extended to any oath or pledge. In Christian times it first meant the oath which a soldier of Christ

took when he swore to be true to his standard or faith; next it meant anything which sanctified men; and finally it was defined by the Church as "a visible sign of invisible grace instituted for our justification."

VIATICUM, a Latin word which originally meant *journey money, or provisions for the way* (from **via**, a road or way). Next it came to mean provision for the journey of life, and finally the term was applied to Holy Communion when administered to the dying, the provision for the soul on its last journey from this world into the next.

VOCABULARY

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl. = ablative.
acc. = accusative.
adj. = adjective.
adv. = adverb.
c. = common gender.
comp. = comparative.
conj. = conjunction.
f. = feminine.
m. = masculine.
n. = noun.
neut. = neuter.

part. = participle.
pass. = passive.
perf. = perfect.
pers. = person.
pl. = plural.
prep. = preposition.
pres. = present.
pron. = pronoun.
superl. = superlative.
v. = verb.
v. dep. = verb deponent.

Numerals indicate the declension of nouns and conjugation of verbs.
 Long vowels are marked (—)—e.g., amāre.

A

a, ab, prep. with abl., from, by, away from.

abeo, ii, itum, (4), to go away, depart.

abnego, (1), to deny.

abscondo, di, ditum, (3), to hide.

accēdo, cessi, cessum, (3), to come, approach.

accendo, di, sum, (3), to kindle.

acceptābilis, e, adj., acceptable.

accipio, cēpi, ceptum, (3), to receive, take.

ad, prep. with acc., to, at, unto, for.

addūco, xi, ctum, (3), to bring.

adesse, pres. infinitive of adsum.

adhuc, adv., still.

adjutōrium, i, n. (2) neut., help, aid.

adjuvo, jūvi, jūtum, (1), to help, aid.

admirābilis, e, adj., admirable.

admiror, (1), v. dep., to wonder.

adōro, (1), to adore.

adsum, adfui, adessee, to be present, to draw nigh.

advenio, vēni, ventum, (4), to come, approach.

adversum, prep. with acc., against.

advorsus, prep. with acc., against.

advocāta, ae, n. (1) f., advocate.

aedifico, (1), to build.

aestimo, (1), to think.

aetas, ātis, n. (3) f., age.

aeternus, a, m, adj., eternal, everlasting.

in aeternum, for ever.

affero, attuli, allātum, afferre, to bring nigh.

afflictus, a, um, afflicted.

ager, ri, n. (2) m., a field.

agnus, i, n. (2) m., a lamb.

ago, ēgi, actum, (3), to do, render, give, drive.

ait, 3rd pers. pres. of aio, to say.

āla, ae, n. (1) f., a wing.

albus, a, um, adj., white.

alius, a, ud, adj., other, else.

alius . . . alius, one . . . another.

alii . . . alii, some . . . others.

almus, a, um, adj., sweet, dear.

altāre, ris, n. (3) neut., an altar.

altus, a, um, adj., high, deep.

amābilis, e, adj., amiable, lovely.

ambo, ae, o, adj., both.

ambulo, (1), to walk.

amicus, i, n. (2) m., a friend.

amo, (1), to love.

amor, ōris, n. (3) m., love.

amplius, adv. comp., yet more.

an, conj., or.

ancilla, ae, n. (1) f., a handmaid.

angelus, i, n. (2) m., an angel.

anima, ae, n. (1) f., soul, life.

animātus, a, um, adj., animated.

ante, *prep. with acc.*, before.
antecēdo, *cessi*, *cessum*, (3), to go before.
antiquus, *a, um, adj.*, ancient.
aperio, *ui*, *ertum*, (4), to open.
apertus, *past part. of aperio*, open.
Apostolus, *i, n. (2) m.*, an Apostle.
appāreo, (2), to appear.
apprehendo, *di, sum*, (3), to take, lay hold of.
appropinquo, (1), to approach, draw nigh.
apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, with, among.
aqua, *ae, n. (1) f.*, water.
arbor, *oris, n. (3) f.*, a tree.
arca, *ae, n. (1) f.*, an ark.
ardens, *pres. part. of ardeo*, burning.
ardeo, *arsi*, *arsum*, (2), to burn, glow.
āridus, *a, um, adj.*, dry, withered.
aro, (1), to plough.
arōma, *atis, n. (3) neut.*, sweet-spice.
ascendo, *di, sum*, (3), to ascend, go up.
aspergo, *si, sum*, (3), to sprinkle.
aspicio, *pexi*, *pectum*, (3), to look, see.
assistō, *stīti*, (3), to stand by, be present.
assūmo, *sumpsi*, *sumptum*, (3), to assume, take up.
at, *conj.*, but.
atque, *conj.*, and.
auctor, *ōris, n. (3) m.*, an author.
audax, *dācis, adj.*, bold, audacious.
audeo, *ausus sum*, (2), *v. semi-dep.*, to dare.
audio, (4), to hear.
aureus, *a, um, adj.*, golden.
auris, *is, n. (3) f.*, an ear.
ausus, *past part. of audeo*, having dared.
aut, *conj.*, or.
autem, *conj.*, but, moreover.
auxilium, *i, n. (2) neut.*, help, aid.
avē, hail!
avis, *is, n. (3) f.*, a bird.

B

baptisma, *atis, n. (3) neut.*, baptism.
baptizo, (1), to baptize.
beātus, *a, um, adj.*, blessed.

bellum, *i, n. (2) neut.*, war.
bene, *adv.*, well.
benedico, *xi*, *ctum*, (3), to bless.
benedictio, *ōnis, n. (3) f.*, benediction.
benedictus, *past part. of benedico*, blessed.
bibo, *bibi*, *bibitum*, (3), to drink.
bonus, *a, um, adj.*, good.
brevis, *e, adj.*, short, brief.

C

cado, *ceci*, *cāsum*, (3), to fall, fall down.
caedo, *cecidi*, *caesum*, (3), to strike, kill.
calix, *icis, n. (3) m.*, a cup, chalice.
candidus, *a, um, adj.*, white.
canto, (1), to sing.
capio, *cēpi*, *captum*, (3), to take, obtain.
caput, *capitis, n. (3) neut.*, a head.
caro, *carnis, n. (3) f.*, flesh.
castellum, *i, n. (2) neut.*, a village, town.
castus, *a, um, adj.*, chaste.
Catholicus, *a, um, adj.*, Catholic.
causa, *ae, n. (1) f.*, a cause.
cēdo, *cessi*, *cessum*, (3), to give place.
centurio, *ōnis, n. (3) m.*, a centurion.
cernuus, *a, um, adj.*, bowing down.
Christiānus, *a, um, adj.*, Christian.
Christiānus, *i, n. (2) m.*, a Christian.
Christus, *i, n. (2) m.*, Christ, the Anointed.
circa, *prep. with acc.*, about, at, in respect of.
circueo, *ii*, *itum*, (4), to go about.
circumstantes, those present.
circumsto, *steti*, (1), to stand round.
cito, *adv.*, quickly.
civitas, *ātis, n. (3) f.*, a city.
clāmo, (1), to cry, cry out.
clāmor, *ōris, n. (3) m.*, a cry.
claudio, *si, sum*, (3), to shut.
clausus, *past part. of claudio*, shut.
clāvis, *is, n. (3) f.*, a key.
clāvus, *i, n. (2) m.*, a nail.
coadūno, (1), to unite.
coelestis, *e, adj.*, heavenly.
coelum, *i, n. (2) neut.*, heaven (*pl. coeli*).

coena, *ae, n. (1) f.*, a supper.
 coep̄erunt, *3rd pers. pl. of perf. of coepio*, to begin.
 cōgitatio, *ōnis, n. (3) f.*, thought.
 cōgito, *(1)*, to think.
 cognātus, *i, n. (2) m.*, a kinsman.
 cognosco, *nōvi, nitum, (3)*, to know.
 comedo, *ēdi, ēsum, (3)*, to eat.
 comitātus, *us, n. (4) m.*, a company.
 cōmuniō, *ōnis, n. (3) f.*, communion.
 compar, *ris, adj.*, equal.
 competenter, *adv.*, fitly.
 complaceo, *(2)*, to please.
 comprehendō, *di, sum, (3)*, to comprehend, seize.
 conceptus, *a, um*, conceived.
 condemnō, *(1)*, to condemn.
 condo, *didi, ditum, (3)*, to lay up.
 Confessor, *ōris, n. (3) m.*, a Confessor.
 confestim, *adv.*, forthwith.
 confidentia, *ae, n. (1) f.*, confidence.
 confiteor, *confessus sum, (2), v. dep.*, to confess, give praise.
 conglorifico, *(1)*, to glorify.
 congrego, *(1)*, to gather together.
 consolātrix, *icis, n. (3) f.*, a consoler.
 conspectus, *ūs, n. (4) m.*, sight.
 constituo, *ui, ūtum, (3)*, to set, place, establish, resolve.
 consubstantialis, *e, adj.*, consubstantial.
 consuētudo, *inis, n. (3) f.*, custom.
 consummatio, *ōnis, n. (3) f.*, consummation.
 consummo, *(1)*, to consummate, fulfil.
 contra, *prep. with acc.*, against, over against.
 conturbo, *(1)*, to disquiet.
 conversor, *(1), v. dep.*, to dwell.
 conversus, *past part. of converto*, turning.
 converto, *verti, versum, (3)*, to turn, bring back.
 co-operatus, *past part. of co-operio*, to clothe.
 cōpiōsus, *a, um, adj.*, plenteous.
 cor, *cordis, n. (3) neut.*, heart.
 cōram, *prep. with abl.*, in the presence of, before.

cornu, *ūs, n. (4) neut.*, a horn.
 corōna, *ae, n. (1) f.*, a crown.
 corpus, *oris, n. (3) neut.*, a body.
 cras, *adv.*, to-morrow.
 creatus, *past part. of creo*, created.
 crēdo, *didi, ditum, (3)*, to believe, trust.
 creo, *(1)*, to create.
 crimen, *inis, n. (3) neut.*, blame, guilt.
 crucifigo, *xi, xum, (3)*, to crucify.
 crucifixus, *past part. of crucifigo*, crucified.
 crux, *crucis, n. (3) f.*, a cross.
 cūjus, *genitive of qui or quis*, whose.
 culpo, *(1)*, to blame.
 cūr, *adv.*, why?
 cūra, *ae, n. (1) f.*, care.
 cūro, *(1)*, to heal, care for.
 custōdia, *ae, n. (1) f.*, a watch, guard, defence.
 custōdio, *(4)*, to guard, keep, preserve, watch over.
 custos, *ōdis, n. (3) m.*, a guard, guardian.

D

daemonium, *i, n. (2) neut.*, an evil spirit, demon.
 Dāvidicus, *a, um, adj.*, of David.
 dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, of, concerning, by.
 dēbeo, *(2)*, to owe.
 dēbet, he ought.
 dēbitor, *ōris, n. (3) m.*, a debtor.
 dēbitum, *i, n. (2) neut.*, a debt, trespass.
 dēfectus, *ūs, n. (4) m.*, deficiency.
 dēfendo, *di, sum, (3)*, to defend.
 dēfunctus, *past part. of dēfungor*, dead, departed.
 deinde, *adv.*, then, thereupon.
 deorsum, *adv.*, down.
 dēprecatio, *ōnis, n. (3) f.*, a prayer, entreaty.
 dērelictus, *a, um*, forsaken.
 descendo, *di, sum, (3)*, to descend.
 despicio, *pexi, pectum, (3)*, to despise, look down on.
 Deus, *i, n. (2) m.*, God.
 devōtio, *ōnis, n. (3) f.*, devotion.
 dextera, *or dextra, ae, n. (1) f.*, a right hand.

diabolus, *i*, *n.* (2) *m.*, the devil.
dico, *imperative of dico*.
dico, *xi*, *ctum*, (3), to say, tell, call, speak.
dies, *ei*, *n.* (5) *m. and f.*, a day.
digitus, *i*, *n.* (2) *m.*, a finger.
dignē, *adv.*, worthily.
dignor, (1), *v. dep.*, to vouchsafe.
dignus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, worthy (*followed by abl.*).
dilectio, *ōnis*, *n.* (3) *f.*, love.
dilectus, *past part. of diligo*, beloved.
diligō, *lexi*, *lectum*, (3), to love.
dimitto, *mihi*, *missum*, (3), to dismiss, forgive, release.
dirigo, *rexī*, *rectum*, (3), to direct.
dissensio, *ōnis*, *n.* (3) *f.*, a dissension.
divido, *visi*, *visum*, (3), to divide.
divinus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, divine.
divitiae, *arum*, *n. pl.* (1) *f.*, riches.
do, *dedi*, *datum*, (1), to give, grant, bestow.
doceo, *docui*, *doctum*, (2), to teach.
doctor, *ōris*, *n.* (3) *m.*, a teacher, doctor.
documentum, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, teaching, ordinance.
doleo, (2), to grieve, sorrow.
dolor, *ōris*, *n.* (3) *m.*, grief, sorrow.
domesticus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, belonging to a household.
dominus, *i*, *n.* (2) *m.*, a lord.
domus, *ūs*, *n.* (4) *f.*, a house, home.
dōnec, *conj.*, until.
dōno, (1), to grant.
dōnum, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a gift, offering.
dormio, (4), to sleep.
dubito, (1), to hesitate, doubt.
dūco, *xi*, *ctum*, (3), to lead.
dulcēdo, *dinis*, *n.* (3) *f.*, sweetness.
dulcis, *e*, *adj.*, sweet.
dum, *conj.*, while.
duo, *ae*, *o*, *adj.*, two; *dative and abl.*, *duōbus*, *duābus*, *duōbus*.
duodecim, *indeclinable adj.*, twelve.

E

eburneus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, of ivory.
ecce, *interjection*, behold! lo!
Ecclesiā, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, the Church.

efficio, *fāci*, *fectum*, (3), to make.
ego, *mei*, *pers. pron.*, I.
eia, *interjection*, come, pray, ah!
ējicio, *jēci*, *jectum*, (3), to cast out.
eleison (*Greek verb*), have mercy on.
ēmitto, *mihi*, *missum*, (3), to send forth.
emo, *ēmi*, *emptum*, (3), to buy.
enim, *conj.*, for.
eo, *ivi*, *itum*, (4), to go.
epistola, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, a letter, epistle.
ergo, *adv.*, therefore, then.
ērgo, *rexī*, *rectum*, (3), to lift, raise up.
ēripio, *ripi*, *reptum*, (3), to deliver, snatch away.
ero, *future of sum*, I shall be.
esse, *infinitive of sum*, to be.
esto, *imperative of sum*, be.
ēsurio, (4), to be hungry.
et, *conj.*, and, also, even; *et . . . et*, both . . . and.
etiam, *conj.*, also.
eum, *acc. of is*, him.
eundum, *gerund of eo*.
ēvangeliū, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, gospel, good tidings.
ex, *prep. with abl.*, from, out of, beyond.
exalto, (1), to exalt, extol, lift up.
exāmen, *inis*, *n.* (3) *neut.*, crisis, agony.
exaudio, (4), to hear graciously.
excelsus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, high, highest, most high.
excito, (1), to stir up, awake.
exeo, *ii*, *itum*, (4), to go forth, go out.
exercitus, *us*, *n.* (4) *m.*, army, host.
exilium, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, exile.
existimo, (1), to think.
expavescō, *pāvi*, (3), to be affrighted.
expecto, (1), to look for, wait for, expect.
exulto, (1), to exult, rejoice.
extendo, *di*, *sum*, (3), to stretch forth.
exul, *ulis*, *n.* (3) *c.*, an exile.

F

faber, *ri*, *n.* (2) *m.*, a carpenter.
fābula, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, a story, tale, fable.
fac, *imperative of facio*.

facies, ōi, n. (5) f., face.
facio, feci, factum, (3), to do, make, cause.
factor, ōris, n. (3) m., a maker.
factum est, it came to pass.
famulus, i, n. (2) m., a servant.
fēlix, icis, adj., happy.
fer, imperative of fero.
fero, tuli, lātum, ferre, to bear, take, bring.
festus, a, um, adj., festive.
fīdēlis, e, adj., faithful.
fīdes, ōi, n. (5) f., faith.
fieri, infinitive of fio.
filia, ae, n. (1) f., a daughter.
filius, i, n. (2) m., a son (*vocative, fili*).
finis, is, n. (3) m., an end, border.
fio, factus sum, fieri, to be done, become, be, come to pass.
fixūra, ae, n. (1) f., a print.
fleo, flēvi, flētum, (2), to weep.
flōs, flōris, n. (3) m., a flower.
fluctus, ūs, n. (4) m., a wave.
flūmen, inis, n. (3) neut., a river, stream.
fluo, fluxi, fluxum, (3), to flow.
foedus, eris, n. (3) neut., covenant.
fores, um, n. pl. (3) f., doors.
forte, adv., by chance, haply.
fortis, e, adj., brave, strong.
fovea, ae, n. (1) f., a ditch.
frango, frēgi, fractum, (3), to break.
frāter, tris, n. (3) m., a brother.
fretum, i, n. (2) neut., sea, strait, water.
frigidus, a, um, adj., cold.
fructus, ūs, n. (4) m., fruit.
frustrā, adv., in vain.
fugio, fūgi, fugitum, (3), to flee.
fūr, fūris, n. (3) m., a thief.
fūror, (1), v. dep., to steal.

G

Galilaea, ae, n. (1) f., Galilee.
gaudeo, gavisus sum, (2), v. semi-dep., to rejoice.
gaudium, i, n. (2) neut., joy, gladness.
gavisus sum, perf. of gaudeo, I rejoiced.
gemo, ui, itum, (3), to sigh.

genitor, ōris, n. (3) m., a father.
genitrix, icis, n. (3) f., a mother.
genitus, a, um, begotten.
gens, gentis, n. (3) f., a people, nation.
Gentes, the Gentiles.
genu, ūs, n. (4) neut., a knee.
gladius, i, n. (2) m., a sword.
glōria, ae, n. (1), glory.
glōrifico, (1), to glorify.
gradus, ūs, n. (4) m., a step.
grātia, ae, n. (1) f., grace; **grātiae,** thanks; **grātias agere,** to give thanks.

H

habeo, (2), to have.
habito, (1), to live, dwell, abide.
hērēditās, ātis, n. (3) f., inheritance, heritage.
Hēva, ae, n. (1) f., Eve.
hic, haec, hōc, demonstrative pron., this; **personal pron.,** he, she, it.
hic, adv., here.
hodiē, adv., to-day.
homo, inis, n. (3) m., a man, man.
honor, ōris, n. (3) m., honour.
honorābilis, e, adj., honourable.
hōra, ae, n. (1) f., an hour.
hostia, ae, n. (1) f., a victim, host.
hostilis, e, adj., hostile.
humilis, e, adj., humble.
hyssōpum, i, n. (2) neut., hyssop.

I

ibi, adv., there.
īdem, eadem, īdem, pron., the same.
iens, euntis, pres. part. of eo, going.
igitur, adv., therefore.
ignis, is, n. (3) m., fire.
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative pron., that; **personal pron.,** he, she, it.
illūminātio, ōnis, n. (3) f., light.
illūmino, (1), to enlighten, illumine.
immaculātus, a, um, adj., immaculate.
immemor, oris, adj., unmindful, forgetful.
immolo, (1), to sacrifice, offer.
impedio, (4), to impede, hinder.
impetus, ūs, n. (4) m., force, attack, power.
impius, a, um, adj., impious, wicked.

implōro, (1), to implore.
in, *prep. with acc.*, into, on to, upon, unto, for; *prep. with abl.*, in, within, among, on.
incarnātiō, **ōnis**, *n.* (3) *f.*, incarnation.
incensum, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, incense.
incipio, **cēpi**, **ceptum**, (3), to begin.
inclino, (1), to incline.
incrēdulus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, faithless.
inde, *adv.*, thence, from there, then, thereupon.
indignus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, unworthy (*followed by abl.*).
ineo, **ii**, **itum**, (4), to enter.
infēlix, **licis**, *adj.*, unhappy.
inferi, **ōrum**, *n. pl.* (2) *m.*, hell.
infero, **intuli**, **illātum**, **inferre**, to put in.
inferre, *infinitive of infero*, to put in.
infirmitas, **ātis**, *n.* (3) *f.*, sickness.
infirmus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, sick, infirm.
infundo, **fūdi**, **fūsum**, (3), to pour in, infuse.
inimicus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, hostile, unfriendly.
inimicus, *i*, *n.* (2) *m.*, an enemy.
iniquitas, **ātis**, *n.* (3) *f.*, iniquity.
iniquus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, unjust, wicked.
initium, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a beginning.
injūria, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, an injury.
innumerābilis, *e*, *adj.*, innumerable, countless.
insignis, *e*, *adj.*, singular, eminent.
insuffio, (1), to breathe upon.
intemerātus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, undefiled.
intendens, *pres. part. of intendo*, attentive.
intercēdo, **cessi**, **cessum**, (3), to intercede.
interficio, **fēci**, **fectum**, (3), to kill, slay, put to death.
intra, *prep. with acc.*, within.
intro, (1), to enter, go into.
introeo, **ii**, **itum**, (4), to enter, go in.
intueor, **tuitus sum**, (2), *v. dep.*, to see, gaze at, behold.
intus, *adv.*, within.
invenio, **vēni**, **ventum**, (4), to find.
invicem, *adv.*, in turn, among one another, one another.

inviolātus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, inviolate.
ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, *definitive pron.*, self; *personal pron.*, he, she, it.
ira, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, anger.
iste, **ista**, **istud**, *demonstrative pron.*, that, this; *personal pron.*, he, she, it.
itaque, *conj.*, therefore, and so, accordingly.
iterum, *adv.*, again.

J

jaceo, (2), to lie.
Jacōbus, *i*, *n.* (2) *m.*, James.
jam, *adv.*, now, already.
jānuā, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, a gate, door.
jeiūno, (1), to fast.
Jerūsalem, *n. indeclinable*, Jerusalem.
Jēsus, **ū**, *n. m.*, Jesus.
Johannes, *is*, *n.* (3) *m.*, John.
jubeo, **jussi**, **jussum**, (2), to order, bid, command.
jubilātiō, **ōnis**, *n.* (3) *f.*, jubilation.
Jūdaeus, *i*, *n.* (2) *m.*, a Jew.
Jūdas, *ae*, *n.* (1) *m.*, Judas.
jūdicium, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, judgment.
jūdico, (1), to judge.
jūro, (1), to swear.
jusjūrāndum, **jūrisjūrāndi**, *n.* (3 and 2) *neut.*, an oath.
justitia, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, justice.
justus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, just.
juvenis, *is*, *n.* (3) *m.*, a young man.
juventus, **tūtis**, *n.* (3) *f.*, youth.
juxtā, *prep. with acc.*, nigh.

K

Kyrie (*Greek noun*), O Lord.

L

labium, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a lip.
labor, **ōris**, *n.* (3) *m.*, work, labour.
labōro, (1), to work, labour.
lacryma, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, a tear.
laetifico, (1), to make glad.
laetitia, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, joy, gladness.
laetor, (1), *v. dep.*, to rejoice, be glad.
laetus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, glad, joyful.
lapis, **idis**, *n.* (3) *m.*, a stone.

lātus, a, um, adj., wide, broad.
latus, eris, n. (3) neut., a side.
laudatio, ōnis, n. (3) f., praise.
laudo, (1), to praise.
laus, laudis, n. (3) f., praise.
lavo, lāvi, lautum or lōtum, (1), to wash.
lectus, i, n. (2) m., a bed, couch.
lego, lēgi, lectum, (3), to read, pick, choose.
lepra, ae, n. (1) f., leprosy.
leprōsus, i, n. (2) m., a leper.
levo, (1), to lift up.
lex, lēgis, n. (3) f., a law.
liber, bri, n. (2) m., a book.
libero, (1), to deliver, set free.
licet, v. impersonal, (2), it is permitted.
ligo, (1), to bind.
lingua, ae, n. (1) f., a tongue.
locus, i, n. (2) m., a place.
longitūdo, dinis, n. (3) f., length.
longus, a, um, adj., long.
loquor, locūtus sum, (3), v. dep., to speak, declare.
lūceo, luxi, (2), to shine.
lūcidus, a, um, adj., bright.
lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, (3), to play.
lūmen, inis, n. (3) neut., light.
lux, lūcis, n. (3) f., light; **primā lūce**, at dawn.

M

magister, ri, n. (2) m., a master.
magnus, a, um, adj., great.
magus, i, n. (2) m., a wise man.
māior, māius, adj. comp. of magnus, greater.
male, adv., ill, evilly, badly.
maledictus, a, um, adj., cursed.
malefactor, ōris, n. (3) m., a malefactor.
malum, i, n. (2) neut., evil.
malus, a, um, adj., bad, evil, wicked.
mandātum, i, n. (2) neut., a commandment.
mando, (1), to command, charge.
mandūco, (1), to eat.
māne, adv., in the morning.
maneo, mansi, mansum, (2), to remain, abide.
manus, ūs, n. (4) f., a hand.
mare, is, n. (3) neut., the sea.

Maria, ae, n. (1) f., Mary.
martyr, yris, n. (3) c., a martyr.
māter, tris, n. (3) f., a mother.
mātūtinus, a, um, adj., morning.
mē, acc. of ego, me.
medius, a, um, adj., middle, in the midst of.
memor, oris, adj., mindful.
memoria, ae, n. (1) f., memory, remembrance, a memorial.
memoror, (1), v. dep., to remember, be mindful.
mens, mentis, n. (3) f., mind, soul.
mercēs, cēdis, n. (3) f., a reward, recompense.
metus, ūs, n. (4) m., fear.
meus, a, um, possessive adj., my, mine.
mihi, dative of ego, to me.
miles, itis, n. (3) m., a soldier.
minister, tri, n. (2) m., a servant.
ministro, (1), to minister.
miser, era, erum, adj., miserable, wretched.
misereor, sertus sum, (2), v. dep., to have mercy, to pity (followed by genitive or dative).
misericordia, ae, n. (1) f., mercy, pity.
misericors, dis, adj., merciful.
mītis, e, adj., gentle.
mitto, misi, missum, (3), to send, cast, put.
modo, adv., now, only.
moneo, (2), to advise, warn.
mons, tis, n. (3) m., a mountain, hill.
monstro, (1), to show, point out.
monumentum, i, n. (2) neut., a tomb, sepulchre, grave.
morior, mortuus sum, (3), v. dep., to die.
mors, tis, n. (3) f., death.
mortuus, a, um, adj., dead.
Moyses, is, n. (3) m., Moses.
mulier, eris, n. (3) f., a woman.
multus, a, um, adj., much, many.
mundo, (1), to cleanse, make clean.
mundus, a, um, adj., clean, pure.
mundus, i, n. (2) m., world, universe, mankind.
mūnus, eris, n. (3) neut., a gift, present.

N

narro, (1), to narrate, tell.
nascor, **nātus sum**, (3), *v. dep.*, to be born.
nātio, **ōnis**, *n.* (3) *f.*, a nation.
nātus, **a**, **um**, *past part. of nascor*, born.
nāvis, *is*, *n.* (3) *f.*, a ship.
Nazarēnus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, of Nazareth, Nazarene.
nē, *conj.*, lest, that not (*followed by subjunctive*).
nec, *conj.*, and not, neither, nor.
negligentia, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, a failing.
nēmo, **inīs**, *n.* (3) *c.*, no one, nobody, no man.
neque, *conj.* (*same as nec*), neither, nor, and not.
nescio, (4), to know not.
nihil, *n.*, *indeclinable*, nothing, naught.
nihilum, **i**, *n.* (2) *neut.*, nothing, naught.
nimis, *adv.*, exceedingly, too much.
nisi, *conj.*, unless, if not, except.
nix, **nivīs**, *n.* (3) *f.*, snow.
nōbis, *dative and abl. of nos*, to us, etc.
nocte, *abl. of nox*, by night.
nōli, *imperative of nōlo*, do not.
nōlo, **nolui**, **nolle**, to be unwilling.
nōmen, **inīs**, *n.* (3) *neut.*, a name.
nondum, *adv.*, not yet.
nonne, *interrogative adv.*, whether not? not? (*indicating that the answer "yes" is expected*).
nōs, *pers. pron.*, we.
nosco, **nōvi**, **nōtum**, (3), to get to know, know.
noster, **tra**, **trum**, *possessive adj.*, our, ours.
nōti, **ōrum**, *n. pl.* (2) *m.*, acquaintances.
nōvi, *perf. of nosco* (*used with pres. meaning*), I know.
nox, **ctis**, *n.* (3) *f.*, night.
nūbes, *is*, *n.* (3) *f.*, cloud.
num, *interrogative adv.*, whether? surely not? (*indicating that the answer "no" is expected*).
numquid, *interrogative adv.*, whether? surely not? (*indicating that the answer "no" is expected*).

nunc, *adv.*, now.

nuntio, (1), to announce.

nuntius, **i**, *n.* (2) *m.*, a messenger.

nurus, **us**, *n.* (4) *f.*, a daughter-in-law.

O

ob, *prep. with acc.*, through, on account of.

oblātio, **ōnis**, *n.* (3) *f.*, an oblation, offering.

obseruo, (1), to mark, observe.

obstupesco, **stupui**, (3), to be amazed.

obumbro, (1), to overshadow.

obuiam, *adv.*, in the way.

obuiam esse, to meet.

obuiam ire, to go to meet.

obuiam venire, to come to meet.

occido, **cidi**, **cisum**, (3), to kill.

occurro, **curri**, **cursum**, (3), to meet, go to meet.

octo, *adj. indeclinable*, eight.

oculus, **i**, *n.* (2) *m.*, an eye.

ōdērun, *3rd pers. pl. of ōdi*, they hate.

ōdi, **ōdisse**, *v. defective*, to hate (*only used in the perf. tenses*).

offendo, **di**, **sum**, (3), to dash, stumble.

offensio, **ōnis**, *n.* (3) *f.*,

offero, **obtuli**, **oblātum**, **offerre**, to offer.

omnipotens, **ntis**, *adj.*, omnipotent, almighty.

omnis, **e**, *adj.*, all, every.

oportet, **uit**, (2), *v. impersonal*, it behoves; must, ought.

optimus, **a**, **um**, *adj. superl. of bonus*, best.

opus, **eris**, *n.* (3) *neut.*, work.

ōrātio, **ōnis**, *n.* (3) *f.*, prayer.

oriens, **tis**, *n.* (3) *m.*, the Orient, east.

orior, **ortus sum**, (4), *v. dep.*, to rise, arise.

orno, (1), to adorn, deck.

ōro, (1), to pray, entreat.

ortus, **a**, **um**, *past part. of orior*, risen.

ōs, **ōris**, *n.* (3) *neut.*, a mouth, face.

ostendo, **di**, **sum**, (3), to show.

ostium, **i**, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a gate, door.

ōtiōsus, **a**, **um**, *adj.*, idle.

ōtium, i, n. (2) *neut.*, leisure, idleness.
ovis, is, n. (3) *f.*, a sheep.

P

pācifico, (1), to make peaceful, pacify.
pando, **pandi**, **pansum**, (3), to open.
pānis, is, n. (3) *m.*, bread; *pl.* loaves.
parābola, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a parable.
paralyticus, i, n. (2) *m.*, a paralytic, a paralysed man.
paro, (1), to prepare, provide.
pars, **partis**, n. (3) *f.*, part, quarter.
parvus, a, um, *adj.*, little, small.
passio, **ōnis**, n. (3) *f.*, passion.
passus, a, um, *past part. of patior*, having suffered.
pastor, **ōris**, n. (3) *m.*, a shepherd, pastor.
pater, **ris**, n. (3) *m.*, a father.
paterfamilias, **patrifamilias**, n. (3) *m.*, the goodman of the house.
patior, **passus sum**, (3), to suffer, endure.
patria, ae, n. (1) *f.*, native land.
patriarcha, ae, n. (1) *m.*, patriarch.
Paulus, i, n. (2) *m.*, Paul.
pauper, **eris**, *adj.*, poor.
pax, **pācis**, n. (3) *f.*, peace.
peccātor, **ōris**, n. (3) *c.*, a sinner.
peccātum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, sin.
pecco, (1), to sin.
pecūnia, ae, n. (1) *f.*, money.
pendeo, **pendi**, **pensum**, (2), to hang (*intransitive*).
per, *prep. with acc.*, through, by, across.
perdo, **didi**, **ditum**, (3), to lose, destroy.
perduco, **duxi**, **ductum**, (3), to bring.
perfidio, **fōdi**, **fossum**, (3), to break open.
perforo, (1), to pierce.
pergo, **perrexi**, **perrectum**, (3), to go, proceed.
perhibeo, (2), to render, bear.
periculum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, danger, peril.
peto, **ivi**, **itum**, (3), to seek, ask.
petra, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a rock, stone.

Petrus, i, n. (2) *m.*, Peter.
phantasma, **atis**, n. (3) *neut.*, a phantasm.
Pharisaeus, i, n. (2) *m.*, a Pharisee.
Pilātus, i, n. (2) *m.*, Pilate.
pinnāculum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, a pinnacle.
piscis, is, n. (3) *m.*, a fish.
pius, a, um, *adj.*, good, pious, tender, loving.
placeo, (2), to please.
plebs, **plēbis**, n. (3) *f.*, people.
plēnus, a, um, *adj.*, full (*followed by abl.*).
pōno, **posui**, **positum**, (3), to put, place, set, lay down.
pontifex, **ficis**, n. (3) *m.*, High Priest.
populus, i, n. (2) *m.*, people.
porta, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a gate, door.
porto, (1), to carry.
possideo, **sēdi**, **sessum**, (2), to possess.
possum, **potui**, **posse**, to be able, can.
post, *prep. with acc.*, after, behind.
postea, *adv.*, afterwards.
potens, **tis**, *adj.*, powerful.
potestas, **ātis**, n. (3) *f.*, power, dominion.
potius, *comp. adv.*, rather, preferably.
pōto, **potāvi**, **potātum** and **pōtum**, (1), to drink.
pōtum, *supine of pōto*, to drink.
prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, for.
praecēdo, **cessi**, **cessum**, (3), to go before, precede.
praecipio, **cēpi**, **ceptum**, (3), to command, enjoin.
praecipuē, *adv.*, especially.
praedicandus, a, um, to be extolled.
praedico, (1), to preach, extol.
praeeo, **ii**, **itum**, (4), to go in advance.
praegustātus, a, um, tasted beforehand.
praeparo, (1), to prepare.
praesidium, i, n. (2) *neut.*, protection.
praesto, **stiti**, **stitum**, (1), to give, bestow, offer.
praevaleo, (2), to prevail.
precor, (1), *v. dep.*, to pray.
primus, a, um, *adj.*, first.
principium, i, n. (2) *neut.*, a beginning.

prius, *adv.*, before.
pro, *prep. with abl.*, for, for the sake of, according to, on behalf of.
prōcēdo, *cessi, cessum*, (3), to proceed, come forth.
prōcido, *cidi*, (3), to fall down.
prōficio, *fēci, fectum*, (3), to assist, help, profit, advance.
profundum, *i, n.* (2) *neut.*, depth.
promissio, *ōnis, n.* (3) *f.*, a promise.
prophēta, *ae, n.* (1) *m.*, a prophet.
prophēto, (1), to prophesy.
propitiatio, *ōnis, n.* (3) *f.*, propitiation.
propositio, *ōnis, n.* (3) *f.*, proposition, show.
proprius, *a, um, adj.*, his, her, or their own, belonging to.
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, through.
propterea, *adv.*, therefore.
prōtego, *texi, tectum*, (3), to protect.
proximus, *i, n.* (2) *m.*, a neighbour.
prūdēns, *tis, adj.*, prudent.
prudentia, *ae, n.* (1) *f.*, prudence, wisdom.
psalmus, *i, n.* (2) *m.*, a psalm.
puer, *eri, n.* (2) *m.*, a boy, child, servant.
pugno, (1), to fight.
pulcher, *chra, chrum, adj.*, fair, beautiful.
pulso, (1), to knock.
pūnio, (4), to punish.
pūpilla, *ae, n.* (1) *f.*, pupil of the eye, apple of the eye.
pūrus, *a, um, adj.*, pure.
puto, (1), to think.

Q

quadrāginta, *indeclinable adj.*, forty.
quaero, *quaesivi, situm*, (3), to seek, ask, inquire.
quaesumus, *we* beseech, entreat.
quālis, *e, adj.*, such as, as, what manner of.
quam, *adv.*, how, than.
quando, *adv.*, when.
quārē, *adv.*, why? wherefore?
quasi, *adv.*, as if, as, as it were.
-que, *conj.*, *enclitic*, and.

quem, *acc. of qui*, whom.
qui, *quae, quod, relative pron.*, who, which, that.
quia, *conj.*, that, for, because.
quicunque, *quaecunque, quodcunque, relative pron.*, whosoever, whatsoever.
quid, *adverbial pron.*, why? *neut. of quis*, what?
quidam, *quaedam, quoddam, indefinite pron.*, some, certain, a certain man.
quinque, *indeclinable adj.*, five.
quintus, *a, um, adj.*, fifth.
quippe, *adv. and conj.*, for, in fact.
quis, *quid, interrogative pron.*, who? which? what? *indefinite pron. (after si, nisi, num, ne)*, any, anyone.
quisquam, *quaequam, quicquam, pron.*, anyone.
quisquis, *quaequae, quidquid (quicquid), indefinite relative pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever.
quō, *adv.*, whither?
quod, *conj.*, that, because.
quodcunque, *neut. of quicunque*, whatsoever.
quōmodo, *adv.*, how? in what manner?
quoniam, *conj.*, that, for, since.
quot, *adv.*, how many?
quotidiānus, *a, um, adj.*, daily.
quotquot, *indeclinable adj.*, as many as.

R

recēdo, *cessi, cessum*, (3), to depart, withdraw.
recipio, *cēpi, ceptum*, (3), to receive, take.
recumbo, *cubui*, (3), to recline (at table).
redemptio, *ōnis, n.* (3) *f.*, redemption.
redemptor, *ōris, n.* (3) *m.*, a redeemer.
redeo, *ii, itum*, (4), to go back, return.
refugium, *i, n.* (2) *neut.*, refuge.
rēgina, *ae, n.* (1) *f.*, a queen.
regio, *ōnis, n.* (3) *f.*, a region, land.
regno, (1), to reign.

regnum, *i, n. (2) neut.*, a kingdom, realm.
rego, rexi, rectum, (3), to rule, govern, direct.
regredior, regressus sum, (3), *v. dep.*, to return, go back.
relinquo, liqui, licium, (3), to leave, abandon.
remissio, ōnis, *n. (3) f.*, remission, forgiveness.
remitto, misi, missum, (3), to send back, remit, forgive.
repleo, plēvi, plētum, (3), to fill.
requies, ētis, *n. (3) f.*, rest, repose.
requiesco, quievi, ētum, (3), to rest, repose.
requiro, quisiui, situm, (3), to seek.
rēs, rei, *n. (5) f.*, a thing, matter, business.
resisto, stili, (3), to resist (*followed by dative*).
respicio, pexi, pectum, (3), to regard, look upon, look.
resplendo, (2), to shine.
respondeo, di, sum, (2), to answer.
responsum, i, *n. (2) neut.*, an answer.
resurgo, surrexi, surrectum, (3), to rise again.
resurrectio, ōnis, *n. (3) f.*, resurrection.
retineo, tinui, tentum, (2), to retain, keep.
revēlo, (1), to reveal.
revolūtus, a, um, *past part. of* **revolvere**, rolled back.
revolveo, vi, volūtum, (3), to roll back.
rex, rēgis, *n. (3) m.*, a king.
ritus, ūs, *n. (4) m.*, a rite.
rōbur, ōris, *n. (3) neut.*, strength.
rosa, ae, *n. (1) f.*, a rose.
rursum, adv., again.

S

sabbata, ōrum, *n. pl. (2) neut.*, a week.
sabbatum, i, *n. (2) neut.*, the sabbath day, Saturday.
sacerdos, dōtis, *n. (3) m.*, a priest.
sacrificium, i, *n. (2) neut.*, a sacrifice.

saeculum, i, *n. (2) neut.*, an age, eternity; a **saeculo**, from all time; in **saecula**, for ever, unto ages.
saepe, adv., often.
salio, salui, saltum, (4), to leap, bound, spring.
salus, ūtis, *n. (3) f.*, salvation, health.
salūtāre, is, *n. (3) neut.*, salvation.
salūto, (1), to greet, salute.
salvātor, ōris, *n. (3) m.*, saviour.
salvē, welcome! hail!
salvus, a, um, *adj.*, safe, whole, saved.
Samaritānus, a, um, *adj.*, Samaritan.
sanctus, a, um, *adj.*, holy, saintly.
sanctus, i, *n. (2) m.*, a saint.
sanguis, inis, *n. (3) m.*, blood.
sāno, (1), to heal.
sapiens, tis, *adj.*, wise.
sapientia, ae, *n. (1) f.*, wisdom.
sata, ōrum, *n. pl. (2) neut.*, fields, cornfields.
scabellum, i, *n. (2) neut.*, a footstool.
scientia, ae, *n. (1) f.*, knowledge.
scio, (4), to know.
scitōte, know ye.
scriba, ae, *n. (1) m.*, a scribe.
scribo, scripsi, scriptum, (3), to write.
scriptūra, ae, *n. (1) f.*, scripture.
sēcum, with himself.
secundum, prep. with acc., according to, after.
secundus, a, um, *adj.*, second.
sed, conj., but.
sedeo, sēdi, sessum, (2), to sit, rest.
sēdes, is, *n. (3) f.*, a seat, throne, place.
sēmen, inis, *n. (3) neut.*, seed.
sēmētisum, reflexive pron. acc. 3rd pers. m., himself.
semper, adv., always.
sempiternus, a, um, eternal, everlasting.
sensus, ūs, *n. (4) m.*, sense.
sentio, sensi, sensum, (4), to feel, think.
seorsum, adv., apart.
sēparo, (1), to separate.
sepelio, lvi, pultum, (4), to bury.
sepultus, a, um, *past part. of sepelio*, buried.

sequor, secūtus sum, (3), *v. dep.*, to follow.
sermo, ōnis, *n.* (3) *m.*, a speech, word.
sēro, adv., too late, late.
servio, (4), to serve (*followed by dative*).
servo, (1), to save, preserve, observe, keep.
servus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a slave, servant.
sex, indeclinable adj., six.
si, conj., if.
si quis, if anyone.
sic, adv., so.
sicut, adv., as, as also, how.
signo, (1), to sign.
signum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a sign, miracle.
similis, e, adj., like (*followed by genitive or dative*).
simul, adv., together, at the same time.
sine, prep. with abl., without.
sino, sivi, situm, (3), to suffer, allow, permit.
socrus, us, *n.* (4) *f.*, a mother-in-law.
sōl, is, *n.* (3) *m.*, the sun.
solum, adv., only, alone.
sōlus, a, um, adj., alone.
solūtus, a, um, past part. of solvo, freed, loosed.
solvo, vi, lūtus, (3), to loose, set free, dissolve.
somnium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a dream.
somnus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, sleep; *pl.* dreams.
sonus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, a sound.
soror, ōris, *n.* (3) *f.*, a sister.
speculum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a mirror.
spēro, (1), to hope, hope for.
spēs, ēi, *n.* (5) *f.*, hope.
spīca, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, an ear of corn.
spīna, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a thorn.
spīrituālis, e, adj., spiritual.
spīritus, ūs, *n.* (4) *m.*, breath, spirit, wind; Sanctus Spīritus, the Holy Ghost.
statim, adv., immediately, forthwith.
statuo, ui, ūtum, (3), to set, place.
stella, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a star.
sto, steti, statum, (1), to stand.
stola, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a robe.

stupēfactus, a, um, adj., astonished, amazed.
stupeo, (2), to be astounded, astonished.
stupor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, astonishment.
sub, prep. with acc., to; *prep. with abl.*, under.
subditus, past part. of subdo, subject, subjected.
subdo, didi, ditum, (3), to subdue, subject.
suffrāgium, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, prayer.
summitto, misi, missum, (3), to let down.
super, prep. with acc. and abl., upon, above, over, for, because of, at, besides, beyond.
supero, (1), to overcome, conquer.
supplementum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, supply.
supplex, icis, adj., suppliant.
supplex, icis, *n.* (3) *c.*, a suppliant.
supra, prep. with acc., over, above.
surgo, surrexi, surrectum, (3), to rise.
suscipio, cēpi, ceptum, (3), receive, take, undertake, protect.
suscito, (1), to raise up.
suspiro, (1), to sigh.
suus, a, um, possessive adj., his, his own, her, its, their.

T

tabernāculum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a tabernacle, dwelling.
tamen, adv., yet, nevertheless, but, however.
tango, tetigi, tactum, (3), to touch.
tantum, adv., only.
tantus, a, um, adj., so great, so much.
tē, acc. of tū, thee.
tectum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a roof, dwelling.
tēcum, with thee.
tēgula, ae, *n.* (1) *f.*, a tile.
templum, i, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a temple.
tempus, oris, *n.* (3) *neut.*, time.
tenebrae, ārum, *n. pl.* (1) *f.*, darkness.
teneo, ui, tentum, (2), to hold, keep.
tentātio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, temptation.
tentātor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a tempter.
tento, (1), to tempt.
terminus, i, *n.* (2) *m.*, end.

terra, *ae, n. (1) f.*, earth, land.
 terreo, (2), to terrify, frighten.
 tertius, *a, um, adj.*, third.
 testāmentum, *i, n. (2) neut.*, a testament, covenant.
 testimoniū, *i, n. (2) neut.*, testimony, witness.
 tetigi, *perf. of tango*, I touched.
 thronus, *i, n. (2) m.*, a throne.
 tibi, *dative of tū*, to thee.
 timeo, (2), to fear, be afraid.
 tollo, sustuli, sublātum, (3), to lift, raise, take away.
 tōtus, *a, um, adj.*, whole, all (*genitive tōtius, dative tōtī*).
 trādo, didi, ditum, (3), to deliver, betray.
 traho, traxi, tractum, (3), to draw.
 trans, *prep. with acc.*, across.
 transeo, ii, itum, (4), to pass, cross over.
 transfigūro, (1), to transfigure.
 trēs, tria, *adj.*, three.
 triduum, *i, n. (2) neut.*, a space of three days.
 trinus, *a, um, adj.*, trine, threefold.
 tristis, *e, adj.*, sad.
 tū, *tui, personal pron.*, thou.
 tunc, *adv.*, then.
 turba, *ae, n. (1) f.*, a crowd, multitude, company.
 turbo, (1), to trouble.
 turris, *is, n. (3) f.*, a tower.
 tuus, *a, um, possessive adj.*, thy, thine.

U

ubi, *adv.*, where.
 ullus, *a, um, adj.*, any (*genitive ullius, dative ullī*).
 umbra, *ae, n. (1) f.*, shade, shadow.
 unde, *adv.*, whence, from where.
 undecim, *indeclinable adj.*, eleven.
 ungo, unxi, unctum, (3), to anoint.
 ūnicus, *a, um, adj.*, sole, only, sole-begotten.
 ūnigenitus, *a, um, adj.*, only-begotten.
 ūnitas, *ātis, n. (3) f.*, unity.
 ūniversus, *a, um, adj.*, all, whole.
 ūnus, *a, um, adj.*, one, same (*genitive ūnīus, dative ūnī*).
 unusquisque, *adj.*, each.

usque, *adv.*, on, right on, continually, even, henceforward.
 ut, *conj. with indicative*, when, as.
 ut, *conj. with subjunctive*, that, so that, in order that.
 uterque, utraque, utrumque, *pron.*, both.
 utique, *adv.*, verily, certainly.

V

vādo, *si, (3)*, to go.
 valdē, *adv.*, very, exceedingly.
 vallis, *is, n. (3) f.*, a valley.
 vānum, in vain.
 vānus, *a, um, adj.*, vain.
 varius, *a, um, adj.*, divers, various, manifold.
 vās, vāsis, *n. (3) neut.*, a vessel.
 vello, vulsi and velli, vulsum, (3), to pluck, pull.
 vēlox, ōcis, *adj.*, swift.
 veneror, (1), *v. dep.*, venerate, worship.
 venio, vēni, ventum, (3), to come.
 venter, *ris, n. (3) m.*, womb, body.
 verbum, *i, n. (2) neut.*, a word.
 vērē, *adv.*, truly, in truth.
 vēritas, *ātis, n. (3) f.*, truth.
 vērō, *conj.*, but.
 vērus, *a, um, adj.*, true.
 vester, tra, trum, *possessive adj.*, your, yours.
 vestimentum, *i, n. (2) neut.*, raiment, clothes.
 vexo, (1), to trouble, vex.
 via, *ae, n. (1) f.*, way, journey, road.
 video, vidi, visum, (2), to see, look.
 videor, visus sum, (2) (*passive of video*), to seem, appear.
 vigilia, *ae, n. (1) f.*, a watch; *pl.*, the night watches.
 vigilo, (1), to watch.
 vinco, vici, victum, (3), to conquer, overcome.
 violō, (1), to break, violate.
 vir, *i, n. (2) m.*, a man.
 virgo, ginis, *n. (3) f.*, a virgin.
 virtus, ūtis, *n. (3) f.*, virtue, strength, courage.
 virtūtes, *um, n. pl. (of virtus) f.*, miracles.

vis, *2nd pers. sing. of volo*, thou dost wish.

viscera, *um, n. pl. (3) neut.*, bowels, heart.

visibilis, *e, adj.*, visible.

visio, *ōnis, n. (3) f.*, a vision.

visito, *(1)*, to visit.

vita, *ae, n. (1) f.*, life.

vivifico, *(1)*, to quicken, give life to.

vivo, *vixi, victum, (3)*, to live.

vivus, *a, um, adj.*, living, alive.

voco, *(1)*, to call, summon.

volo, *volui, velle*, to be willing, to wish.

volo, *(1)*, to fly.

voluntas, *ātis, n. (3) f.*, will.

vōs, *vestri, personal pron.*, you.

vox, *vōcis, n. (3) f.*, voice.

vulnus, *eris, n. (3) neut.*, a wound.

vult, *3rd pers. sing. of volo*, he wishes.

vultis, *2nd pers. pl. of volo*, you wish.

INDEX

	PAGES		PAGES
Ablative :		Genitive, use of	10, 113
Absolute - - -	72, 119	Gerund - - -	81, 83, 98, 121
Comparison - - -	50, 114	Gerundive - - -	82, 83, 102, 121
Time - - -	80, 114, 120	Imperative Mood :	
Use of - - -	11, 114	Active - - -	26, 98
Accusative :		Passive - - -	64, 102
And Infinitive - - -	78, 115	Imperfect Tense :	
Time - - -	80, 113, 120	Indicative Active - - -	28
Use of - - -	113	Indicative Passive - - -	48
Adjectives :		Subjunctive Active - - -	70
Comparison - - -	50, 91	Subjunctive Passive - - -	75
2nd Declension - - -	13, 17, 19, 89	Indirect Command - - -	116
3rd Declension - - -	36, 37, 90	Indirect Question - - -	75, 116
Clauses :		Indirect Statement - - -	77, 115
Adjectival - - -	116	Infinitive Mood :	
Adverbial - - -	116	Active - - -	14, 77, 98
Causal - - -	117	Passive - - -	64, 77, 102
Concessive - - -	118	Ipse - - -	69, 93
Conditional - - -	74, 118	Jussive Subjunctive - - -	68
Consecutive - - -	117	Malo - - -	103
Final - - -	117	Noli with Infinitive - - -	62, 121
Noun - - -	115	Nolo - - -	103
Temporal - - -	116	Noun Clauses - - -	115
Cum following case - - -	29	Numerals - - -	94, 95
Dative, use of - - -	10, 113	Optative Subjunctive - - -	68
Deponent Verbs - - -	62	Participles :	
Eo - - -	66, 103	Future - - -	59, 60, 98
Esse - - -	13, 27, 28, 99	Past - - -	52, 102
Fero - - -	103	Present - - -	59, 98
Fio - - -	103	Perfect Tense :	
Future Tense :		Indicative Active - - -	41, 42, 43, 44
Active - - -	26, 27	Indicative Passive - - -	52
Passive - - -	49	Subjunctive Active - - -	75
Future-Perfect Tense :		Subjunctive Passive - - -	76
Active - - -	42, 43, 44		
Passive - - -	53		
Gender of Nouns - - -	16		

	PAGES		PAGES
Pluperfect :		Questions :	
Indicative Active	41, 42, 43, 44	Direct - - -	79, 119
Indicative Passive - -	53	Indirect - - -	75, 116
Subjunctive Active - -	73		
Subjunctive Passive - -	74	Semi-Deponent Verbs - -	64
Possum - - -	14, 103	Sequence of Tenses - -	115
Present Tense :		Supines - - -	84, 122
Indicative Active	8, 12, 13, 23, 24	Time - - -	80, 81, 120
Indicative Passive - -	46, 47		
Subjunctive Active - -	68	Verbs :	
Subjunctive Passive - -	68	In -io - - -	60, 61
Prepositions - - -	21, 104, 105	Irregular - -	45, 46, 54, 103, 106
Prohibitions - - -	62, 76, 121		
Pronouns :		Volo - - -	103
Demonstrative - -	57, 58, 93	Wishes - - -	120
Personal - - -	55, 56, 93		
Relative - - -	65, 93		

THE "SOWER SCHEME" AND ITS HANDBOOKS

A Scheme of Religious Instruction. (Approved for optional use in the Archdiocese of Birmingham.) 1s. (postage 1d.).

The Little Ones. By M. EATON. A handbook for teachers following first period of above Scheme. 2s. 6d. (postage 2d.).

Stories in School: A Teachers' Material Book (O.T., N.T., and Saints) for the Middle Period. 5s. (postage 3½d.).

Short Instructions on the Mass for Children. Another middle-period book; can be used as a children's Reader. From *The Sower*. Price 4d. (postage 1d.). Or 3s. a dozen (postage 6d.), and 36s. a gross (carriage 2s. 6d.).

Twelve to Thirteen: A Teachers' Material Book for use with Older Children. From *The Sower*. 3s. 6d. (postage 1½d.).

Catechism Theology. By J. B. McLAUGHLIN, O.S.B. A third-period book of higher doctrinal instruction. Cloth 3s. 6d., Boards 2s. 6d. (postage 3d.).

Religion in School. By the Editor of *The Sower*. This gives the principles on which the Scheme and its handbooks are built. Second edition. 1s. (postage 1d.).

The Way into the Kingdom: A Book for all who Teach. Reprinted from *The Sower*, with an introduction on school methods by the Editor. 1s. 6d. (postage 1½d.).

THE SOWER. A Monthly Journal of Catholic Education. By post only. Subscription 5s. yearly. (Nearly all back numbers are still obtainable.)

All the above can be had from **THE SOWER, 763, COVENTRY ROAD, BIRMINGHAM**
OR

BURNS OATES AND WASHBOURNE LTD.
LONDON . MANCHESTER . BIRMINGHAM . GLASGOW



